



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

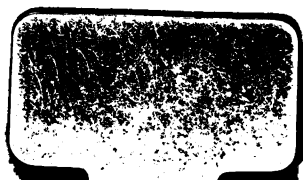
- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

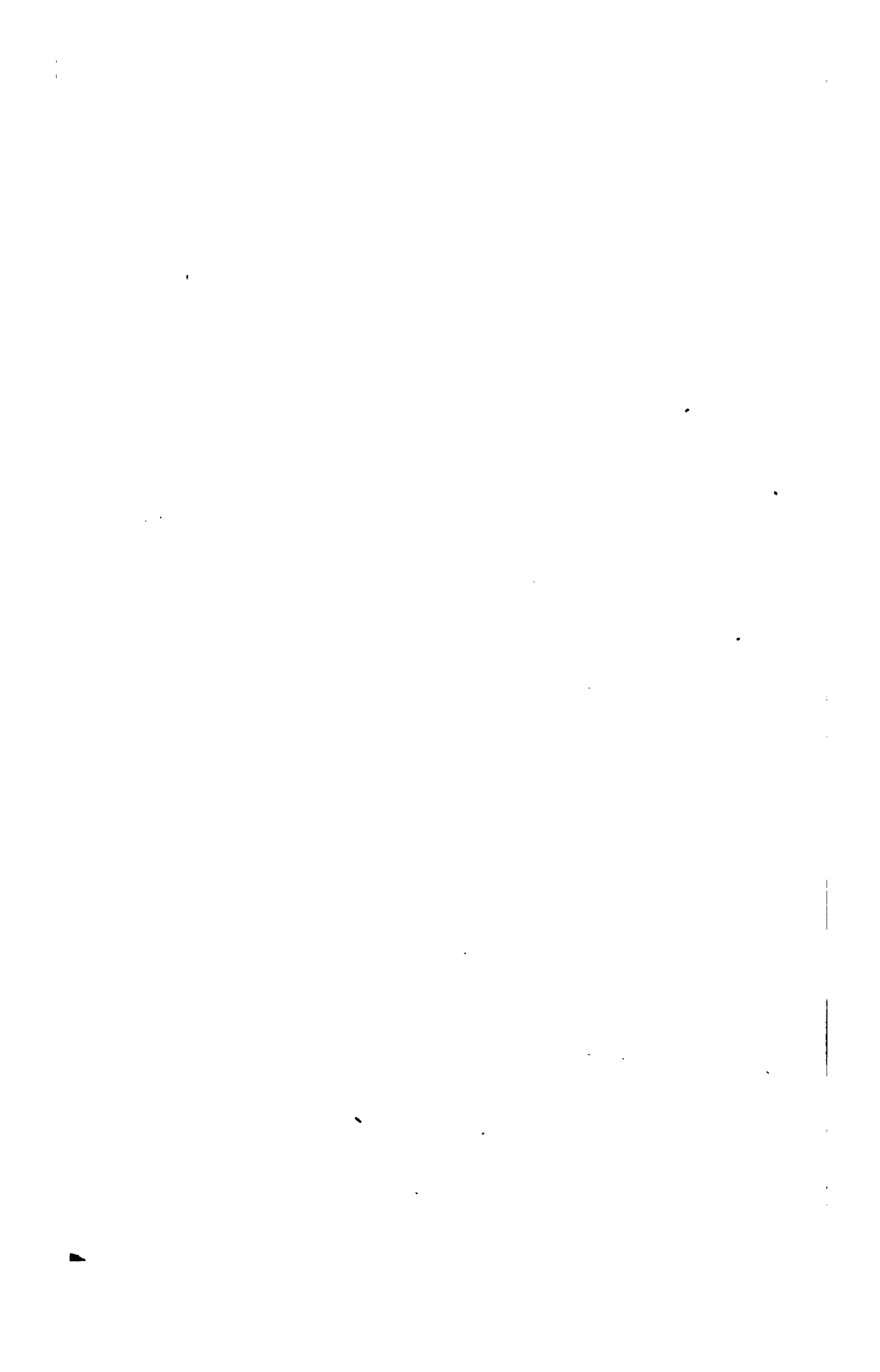
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



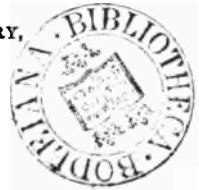
44. 1575.







A
LATIN GRAMMAR,
FOUNDED ON THE ETON,
AND
ARRANGED IN A TABULAR FORM,
TO FACILITATE REFERENCE AND ASSIST THE MEMORY,
WITH NOTES,
AND AN
EXPLANATION OF THE GRAMMATICAL AND RHETORICAL FIGURES
IN MORE GENERAL USE.



BY THE
REV. GEORGE TAYLOR, D.C.L.
LECTURER OF DEDHAM,
AND LATE MASTER OF THE GRAMMAR SCHOOL.

THIRD EDITION.

LONDON:
LONGMAN, BROWN, GREEN, AND LONGMANS,
PATERNOSTER ROW ;
& SOLD BY KNIBB, COLCHESTER.

1844.

Price 3s. bound.

LONDON:
GILBERT AND RIVINGTON, PRINTERS,
ST. JOHN'S SQUARE.

ADVERTISEMENT TO THE SECOND EDITION.

THIS Grammar was originally designed for, and till lately had been confined to the School of which the Editor has the superintendence ; but during the last year and a half it has been used in an eminent Proprietary Grammar School near the Metropolis, at the request of an old and much-valued friend of the Editor, a proprietor and director of the same. The flattering acknowledgment of usefulness which it has there received, encourages him, on committing it again to the press, to offer it to the notice of the public, in the hope that, whatever merit it may possess in assisting the labours of either tutor or pupil, it may have the opportunity of a proportionate circulation.

*Free Grammar School of Queen Elizabeth,
Dedham, July 21, 1836.*

A third impression being now called for, the Editor takes the opportunity of repeating that his original design was only to present to the learner, as he thought in a more convenient form, the substance of the Eton Grammar, that being preferred chiefly because most of his pupils, who came from other schools, had been used to it. This he hoped to effect by placing before him one entire subject, or portion of a subject, and no more, at the turn of every leaf, and by enlisting the eye, as far as was possible, in the service of the memory, as in the Rules for Gender given in English, and those of Government (pages 10 and 50), where the position of a class of nouns indicates the gender, and of verbs or adjectives the case governed. In other places (as in pages 34, 35, and Prosody) it has been his aim, by a tabular arrangement, to enable the learner at a glance to distinguish the irregular exception from the general rule, and to fix that distinction on the mind, as far as it could be effected by typographical aid.

While, however, the wants of younger boys were so far consulted, more seemed to be required for others of advanced age and attainments, which has been supplied in the Notes, and the short system of Grammatical and Rhetorical Figures.

Successive deviations in form, and supplements in matter, have indeed given to the book a new character, for which the Author's only apology is, that in endeavouring to make it more complete, he has been equally anxious to add as little as possible to the labour of the young scholar, to whom, at best, so much grammatical toil is necessary and unavoidable.

*Lecture House, Dedham,
June, 1844.*

CONTENTS.

PART I.

	PAGE
An Outline of English Grammar	1
Division of the Alphabet, and the Parts of Speech	ib.
Declension of Nouns Substantive	8, 9
Rules for the Genders of Nouns	10—13
Declension and Comparison of Adjectives	14, 15
Declension of Pronouns	16, 17
Verbs, Moods, Tenses, &c.	18
The English Verb "To love"	19
The Verb <i>Sum</i> , "I am"	20, 21
Conjugations of Latin Verbs and Table of Terminations	22, 23
The First Conjugation, Active and Passive	24, 25
The Second ditto ditto	26, 27
The Third ditto ditto	28, 29
The Fourth ditto ditto	30, 31
Rules for the Formation of Tenses, with a Diagram	32, 33
Formation of Perfects and Supines	34—36
Declension of Irregular Verbs	37—40
Defective, Impersonal Verbs, &c.	40, 41
Prepositions	42
A Short Syntax preparatory to Translating an easy sentence	43, 44
The Examples of the Eton Syntax arranged as a first construing lesson	45, 46

PART II.

The Syntax in English, with the Examples translated	48
Explanatory and Supplementary Notes on the Syntax	68
The principal Rules in Latin, to be construed and committed to memory	77
The Prosody	82
Notes on the Prosody	88
Supplementary Notes	90
Table of Feet in general	92
Grammatical Figures	93
Rhetorical Tropes or Figures	95

A PREPARATORY OUTLINE

OF

ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

THE English alphabet consists of twenty-six letters :

a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, w, x, y, z.

The Latin alphabet has only twenty-four letters, which are the same as the above, omitting *k* and *w*.

These letters are divided into VOWELS and CONSONANTS.

The VOWELS are *a, e, i, o, u*, and *y*; and they are distinguished by their making a complete sound by themselves.

The CONSONANTS are the remaining letters, which cannot be sounded without some movement of the tongue or lips, nor without the help of a vowel.

CONSONANTS are $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} l, m, n, r, \text{ which are called } \textit{liquids}. \\ j, x, z, \text{ which being equivalent to } dg, ce, \text{ and } ds, \text{ respectively, are} \\ \text{ of three kinds: } \quad \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ called } \textit{double letters}. \\ \text{ the remaining letters, which are called } \textit{mutes}. \end{array} \right. \end{array} \right.$

In English *y* and *w* are considered vowels when they happen in the middle of a word, as in the words *towel*, *voyage*, *royal*.

In Latin *k, y, z*, occur only in words of Greek extraction.

A SYLLABLE is a distinct sound of one or more letters pronounced in a breath, as, *dog, see, run, a-muse-ment, un-der-stand-ing*.

Every syllable must have at least one vowel in it.

Words of one syllable only are called *monosyllables*.

Words of two syllables are called *disyllables*.

Words of three syllables are called *trisyllables*.

Words of more than three are called *polysyllables*, that is many-syllabled.

A DIPHTHONG is the sound of two vowels in one syllable, as *ou* in the word *mouse*, and *oi* in the words *oil, rejoice*, and *au* in the word *author*.

LATIN DIPHTHONGS are five in number ; namely, *au, eu, ei, ae, oe*. The last two, *ae* and *oe*, are commonly pronounced as the single vowel *e*, and are generally joined together and written thus, *Æ æ, Œ œ*, as in the Latin words *musæ* and *cœna*.

There are nine different kinds of words, which are called parts of speech :

A NOUN SUBSTANTIVE, a PRONOUN, and a VERB, which are declined both in English and Latin, that is, admit of a change in their ending.

A NOUN ADJECTIVE, and a PARTICIPLE, which are declined only in Latin.

AN ADVERB, CONJUNCTION, PREPOSITION, and INTERJECTION, which are not declined in either language.

OF A NOUN.

A NOUN is simply the name of any thing, person, or being, we see or speak of ; as, *man, book, courage, red, yellow, grand*.

Nouns are of two kinds, Nouns-Substantive and Nouns-Adjective.

+

B

NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE.

A NOUN-SUBSTANTIVE declares its own meaning, and has generally the word *a* or *an*, or *the*, before it ; as, *a man, an angel, the book*.

Of these nouns there are two kinds: PROPER NOUNS and COMMON NOUNS.

A PROPER NOUN, more commonly called a PROPER NAME, is the name of some place or person ; as, *Edward, Westminster, Johnson, Cicero, Rome*.

A COMMON NOUN is the name of an entire set or kind of things ; as, *a horse, a mill, a road, a newspaper*.

NOUNS ADJECTIVE.

A NOUN-ADJECTIVE only denotes the *nature* or *quality* of a substantive, to which it must be joined in order to have any meaning in a sentence, as *a good, a bad*, mean nothing by themselves ; but joined to the word *boy*, as *a good boy, a bad boy*, they show the nature, quality, or disposition of the boy, which word *boy* is the substantive to the adjectives *good* and *bad*. Thus also the words *large, tall, beautiful, ugly*, are adjectives. Place after each of them the substantive *tree*, and they tell you what kind of tree it is ; as, *a large tree, a tall tree, &c. &c.*

Adjectives denoting number are called NUMERALS, and they are of two kinds, CARDINALS and ORDINALS.

CARDINAL numbers are those which simply denote the number itself ; as, *five, nine, eleven*.

ORDINALS denote the *order, rank, or succession* of things ; as, *the fifth, the ninth, the eleventh*.

Among adjectives may be reckoned the English Articles *A* or *AN*, and *THE*, before mentioned ; of which *THE* is called the DEFINITE ARTICLE, because it DEFINES or marks some person or thing before-mentioned, as, *the battle was fought* ; *A* or *AN* is called INDEFINITE, because it does not define any particular person or thing, as, *a holiday is agreeable*.

The article *A* is used before consonants, *AN* before vowels or words beginning with *h* when not aspirated.

NUMBERS.

There are two Numbers in grammar, the Singular and the Plural.

The Singular number speaks only of one person or thing, as *a father, a boy*.

The Plural number speaks of more than one, as *fathers, boys*.

The English plural is generally formed by adding *s* or *es* to the singular ; as, singular, *a dog*, plural, *dogs* ; singular, *a church*, plural, *churches*.

But there are various other plural forms ; as, *a child*, plural, *children* ; *a man*, plural, *men* ; *goose*, plural, *geese* ; *mouse*, plural, *mice* ; *tooth*, plural, *teeth*.

GENDERS.

There are THREE GENDERS of Nouns, the MASCULINE, the FEMININE, and the NEUTER.

To the MASCULINE GENDER belong living creatures of the Male kind.

To the FEMININE GENDER belong living creatures of the Female kind.

All other substantives in English belong to the NEUTER GENDER, the word *neuter* meaning *neither* ; i. e. they are neither masculine nor feminine ; but in Latin they are variously assigned to the three genders, according to rules which will be given hereafter. [See page 10.]

CASES OF NOUNS.

In English there are only *three* Cases of Nouns ; in Latin, *six*. The three English cases are called: 1st, the NOMINATIVE, 2nd, the POSSESSIVE or GENITIVE, and 3rd, the OBJECTIVE.

A noun is of the Nominative case, when it denotes the person or thing that *performs the action*, or that is *spoken of*; as, *the butcher kills*,—where *butcher* is the nominative.

A noun is of the Objective case, when it denotes the person or thing which is the *object* of the action ; as, *the butcher kills the pig*. Here the pig being the *object* of the butcher's work or action, is said to be in the *Objective* case ; but, observe, the Nominative and Objective cases are both alike in English.

A noun is of the Possessive case [which is commonly called the Genitive] when it denotes *possession*, or that person or thing to which something mentioned belongs, and it is formed by adding 's with a comma called *apostrophe* before it ; as, nom. *the farmer*, possessive, *the farmer's*; which means of or belonging to the *farmer*. Thus, *the butcher kills the farmer's pig*, i. e. *the pig of the farmer*. Here the word *farmer's* denotes that the pig belongs to, or is in the possession of the farmer, and therefore is said to be in the Possessive case.

When the substantive ends in *s*, the Possessive case is formed by adding only the comma or apostrophe, without another letter *s*; as, *the boys' playground*, or *the playground of the boys*. Here the apostrophe shows that the playground belongs to the boys.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

As Adjectives denote qualities, so by change of termination they express a change in the degree of such qualities ; as, *large*, *larger* or *more large*, *largest* or *most large*.

There are three degrees of Comparison : the POSITIVE, the COMPARATIVE, and the SUPERLATIVE.

The Positive simply denotes the quality ; as, *short*, *strong*.

The Comparative signifies *more*, and ends in *er* ; as, *shorter* or *more short*, *stronger* or *more strong*.

The Superlative signifies *most*, and ends in *est* ; as, *shortest* or *most short*, *strongest* or *most strong*.

But when the word is of more than one syllable, unless it end in *le* or *y*, the comparison is made by *more* and *most* ; as,

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
learned,	more learned (not <i>learneder</i>)	most learned (not <i>learnedest</i>).

But the word *gentle* makes either *gentler*, or *more gentle*.
happy makes either *happier*, or *more happy*.

Many adjectives are compared irregularly ; as,

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
little,	less,	least.
much,	more,	most.
bad,	worse,	worst.
late,	later,	latest or last.
far,	farther,	farthest.
old,	older or elder,	oldest or eldest.

PRONOUNS.

A Pronoun is a word that stands for some Noun Substantive before mentioned or understood. Pronouns are called either PERSONAL, POSSESSIVE, or RELATIVE.

Personal Pronouns denote *persons*; as, *I, thou, he, she, it, we, ye or you, they.*

Possessive Pronouns denote *possession*; as, *my or mine, thy or thine, his, her, its, our, your, their*; and they denote the Possessive of the Personal Pronouns to which they correspond respectively; thus

my or mine is the Possessive of *I*.
our is the Possessive of *we*.
their is the Possessive of *they*.

The Relative Pronouns are *who, which*, and the word *that* when used for *who* or *which*; and these are so called because they *relate* immediately to their corresponding noun: as, The Queen, *who* now reigns, is beloved; that is, The Queen, *which* Queen now reigns, &c.

Pronouns are of THREE PERSONS:

The First Person is the person or persons speaking—*I or we love.*

The Second Person is the person or persons spoken to—*thou or ye or you love.*

The Third Person is the person or persons spoken of—*he, she, it, or they love.*

Who or *which* is of the same person as the pronoun to which it relates; as,

I or *we who* love.—Here *who* is of the First Person.

thou or *ye who* love.—Here *who* is of the Second Person.

he or *she who* loves.—Here *who* is the Third.

Observe, the Objective case of *I* is *me*.

— of *thou* is *thee* or *you*.
 — of *we* is *us*.
 — of *he* is *him*.
 — of *she* is *her*.
 — of *ye* is *you*.
 — of *they* is *them*.
 — of *who* is *whom*.

In the following sentences the words in italics represent—

1st, The Nominative Personal Pronoun before the Verb;

2nd, The Objective Personal after it; and

3rd, The corresponding Possessive Pronoun Adjective.

NOMINATIVE.		OBJECTIVE.		POSSESSIVE.	
<i>I</i>	resign	<i>me</i>	to	<i>my</i>	fate.
<i>Thou</i>	resignest	<i>thee</i>	to	<i>thy</i>	fate.
<i>He</i>	resigns	<i>him</i>	to	<i>his</i>	fate.
<i>We</i>	resign	<i>us</i>	to	<i>our</i>	fate.
<i>Ye</i>	resign	<i>you</i>	to	<i>your</i>	fate.
<i>They</i>	resign	<i>them</i>	to	<i>their</i>	fate.

The relative *who* or *which*, when governed by the Verb, becomes *whom* or *which*; and its Possessive answering or asking the question of *property*, is *whose*; as,

He, *whom* you seek, is here.

Whose house is it?

Whose house it is, I know not.

VERB.

A Verb signifies TO BE SOMETHING—as, *he is warm* ;
 ——— TO DO SOMETHING—as, *they strike* ; or
 ——— TO SUFFER SOMETHING—as, *I am wounded*.

Thus the words *love, grow, sing, walk, fly, learn, fill*, are all Verbs because they denote *being, doing, or suffering*.

VOICE.

When the person spoken of does the action, the Verb is said to be in the ACTIVE, that is, the *acting* voice.

When the person has the action done to him, the Verb is said to be in the PASSIVE ; which means, the *suffering* voice.

Thus there are two voices to Verbs, the ACTIVE and the PASSIVE. But some actions cannot be done to or suffered by other persons or things, as *walking, swimming*. You cannot say, *I am walked, I am run*.

Thus there are some actions which can *pass on* to other persons or things, and some which cannot. Those Verbs whose action *can pass on*, or be done to others, are called TRANSITIVE VERBS, from a Latin word, *transeo*, which means *I pass on*. And those Verbs whose actions *cannot pass on*, are called NEUTER, or INTRANSITIVE ; that is, *not transitive*.

TRANSITIVE VERBS.—*I break a stick ; I throw a ball*. Here the actions pass on to the words *stick, ball*.

INTRANSITIVE VERBS.—*I am glad ; I stand ; they run ; the river flows ; she sleeps*.

Here the actions are all confined to the persons who do them, and do not pass on to any following noun.

Whoever or whatever *does the action* denoted by a Verb, is called the *agent*, which word means the *doer* of any thing, from a Latin word, *ago*, I do. Whoever or whatever has the action done to him or it, is called the *object*. Thus in the sentence, *The mice devour the cheese*,—*devouring* is the action, *mice* is the agent or doer, and *cheese* is their object ; the agent and object coming before or after the Verb, according as the Verb is active or passive.

TENSES.

The time of any action denoted by a Verb must be Present, Future, or Past ; as, *I now write, I shall write to-morrow, I wrote yesterday*.

The *state* of the action may be *perfect, imperfect, or indefinite*.

A past action may be of three kinds with relation to any time mentioned, according as it was only *doing*, and *not ended at the time*, or was *completely finished*, or was *done before the time*.

Verbs have therefore, in all, FIVE TIMES or states of action, which in grammar are called TENSES ; viz.

The *Present*, which signifies any thing *now doing* ; as, *I write, or am now writing*.

The *Imperfect*, which signifies a thing that was doing at some time mentioned, but not then ended ; as, *I did write, or was writing*.

The *Perfect*, which signifies a thing *completely done* ; as, *I wrote it at noon, or I have written it*.

The *Pluperfect*, which signifies a thing which was done before the time ; as, *I had written it at noon*.

The *Future*, which signifies a thing to be done hereafter ; as, *I shall or will write to-morrow.*

To these we may add the *Future Perfect*, signifying an action that *will have been completed* at some time mentioned ; as, *I shall have written it to-morrow.*

MOODS.

Verbs have in English THREE MOODS ; in Latin, FIVE.

1. The INDICATIVE (from the Latin word *indico*, I relate or declare) simply *declares* a thing or *asks* a question ; as, *I love ; Dost thou love ?*
2. The IMPERATIVE (from the Latin word *impero*, I command) *commands* or *entreats* ; as, *Come hither ! Spare me ! Let us go.*
3. The INFINITIVE (from the Latin word *infinitus*, indefinite) is when no number or person is *defined* or *expressed*, and it is known by the sign *to* ; as, *to love, to have loved, to be about to love.*

The POTENTIAL MOOD (which belongs to the Latin language, and is derived from *potens*, able) signifies *power* or *duty*, and is commonly rendered in English by these signs,—*may, can, might, would, could, should, or ought* ; as, *I may love, I should have loved.*

The SUBJUNCTIVE (of the Latin language, from *subjungo*, I subjoin) differs from the Potential only as it is *subjoined* to some other word before it in the same sentence, and has some conjunction or *indefinite* word joined to it.

PARTICIPLES.

Participles are derived from Verbs, and are so called from their *participating* in the quality of a Verb and a Noun-Adjective.

Latin Participles derive from a Verb,—tense and signification ; from a Noun-Adjective,—number, gender, and case.

There are two Participles : the Active ending in *ing*, which in Latin ends in *ans* or *ens*, as *loving, amans*—teaching, *docens* ; and the Perfect Passive ending in *d, t*, or *n*, and in Latin in *us*, as *read, lectus*—taught, *doctus*—seen, *visus*.

In Latin there are two others : the Future Active ending in *rus*, and signifying a likelihood or design of doing a thing, as *amaturus*, about to love ; and the Future Passive in *dus*, signifying a future action, as *amandus*, to be loved.

The principal parts of an English Verb are the Present Tense, the Perfect and the Passive Participle, and these are often very irregular.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Perfect Participle.</i>
I love,	I loved,	loved.
I write,	I wrote,	written.
I teach,	I taught,	taught.
I catch,	I caught,	caught.
I sing,	I sang or sung,	sung.
I drive,	I drove,	driven.
I do.	I did,	done.

The second person singular of English Verbs ends in *st*, except *thou wilt* and *thou shalt*. The third person singular ends in *s* or *th* ; as *he loves*, or *he loveth*.

The auxiliary Verbs are *to be, do, have, will, shall, may, can*, which are thus declined :

1.	2.	3.
<i>Present.</i> I do,	thou doest <i>or</i> dost, <i>or</i> you do,	{ he doeth, doth <i>or</i> does : we do, ye do, they do.
<i>Perfect.</i> I did,	thou didst <i>or</i> you did,	he did : we did, ye did, they did.
<i>Present.</i> I have,	thou hast <i>or</i> you have,	{ he hath <i>or</i> has : we have, ye have, they have.
<i>Perfect.</i> I had,	thou hadst <i>or</i> you had,	he had : we had, ye had, they had.
<i>Present.</i> I shall,	thou shalt <i>or</i> you shall,	{ he shall : we shall, ye shall, they shall.
<i>Present.</i> I should,	thou shouldest <i>or</i> you should,	{ he should : we should, ye should, they should.
<i>Present.</i> I will,	thou wilt <i>or</i> you will,	he will : we will, ye will, they will.
<i>Present.</i> I would,	thou wouldest <i>or</i> you would,	{ he would : we would, ye would, they would.
<i>Present.</i> I may,	thou mayest <i>or</i> you may,	{ he may : we may, ye may, they may.

The Verb 'to be.'

<i>Present, am.</i>	<i>Perfect, was.</i>	<i>Part. been.</i>
I am,	I was.	
thou art <i>or</i> you are,	thou wast <i>or</i> you were.	
he is,	he was.	
we are,	we were.	
ye are,	ye were.	
they are,	they were.	

Verbs have two Numbers, the Singular and the Plural, and three Persons in each number.

The Verb agrees with the doer or agent in Number and in Person.

[Say next the Verb "To Love," page 19.]

ADVERB.

An Adverb is a word added to a Verb or Noun, to increase or diminish the strength of it ; as,

He speaks <i>well</i> .	They write <i>badly</i> .
He was <i>truly</i> a king.	He was <i>moderately</i> learned.

PREPOSITION.

A Preposition is so called on account of its *position* (præ) *before* other words ; as

<i>About</i> the city.	<i>Above</i> the roof.
<i>After</i> a time.	<i>Against</i> the king.

CONJUNCTION.

A Conjunction is used to connect words and sentences together ; as,

My father *and* my mother.
Though he swear it, *yet* I cannot believe him.
 He is *either* a knave *or* a fool.
 I will not betray you, *if* you will trust me.

INTERJECTION.

An Interjection is an expression of grief or joy, or other passion of the mind, and is so called from two Latin words, *jacio*, I throw, *inter*, between ; because it is *thrown* into the middle of the sentence, without any governing power in it. Such are,

Alas ! Lo ! Hush ! Strange !

THE LATIN GRAMMAR.

NOUNS.

NOUNS have in Latin six CASES in each Number, viz. the Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, and Ablative.

1. The NOMINATIVE is the case of the person *who performs any action*; as, The master teaches.
2. The GENITIVE is the case of the person *to whom any thing belongs or relates*, and it is known by the word *of* or *'s* apostrophe; as, The learning *of the master*, or, The *master's* learning.
3. The DATIVE is the case of the person *to whom any thing is given*, and it is known by the words *to* or *for*; as, I give the book *to the master*.
4. The ACCUSATIVE is the case of the person *to whom any thing is done*; as, He teaches *the boys*.
5. The VOCATIVE is the case of the person *called or spoken to*; as, Teach me, *master!*
6. The ABLATIVE is the case of the person *from whom any thing is taken, concerning whom any thing is spoken, by whom any thing is done*; and it is known by the words *in, with, from, by, &c.* as,
I received instruction *from the master*.
They speak these things *concerning the master*.
He was taught *by the master*.

An English example declined after the Latin form.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
Nominative.	A king.	Nom.	Kings.
Genitive.	Of a king.	Gen.	Of kings.
Dative.	To or for a king.	Dat.	To or for kings.
Accusative.	A king.	Acc.	Kings.
Vocative.	King.	Voc.	Kings.
Ablative.	In, with, from, or by a king.	Abl.	In, with, from, or by kings.

These different relations are not expressed in Latin by words corresponding to the English signs, *of, to, for, &c.*, but by certain changes in the last syllable of the Nominative; as,

Sing. Nom.	Mus-a, <i>a song</i> .	Plur. Mus-æ, <i>songs</i> .
Gen.	Mus-æ, <i>of a song, &c.</i>	Mus-arum, <i>of songs</i> .

NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE.

There are FIVE DECLENSIONS OF NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE, which are distinguished by the ending of the Genitive case.

The 1st makes the Genitive and Dative cases to end in . e, as *Mus-æ*.

The 2nd makes the Genitive case to end in i, as { *Magistr-i*.
Domin-i.
Regn-i.

The 3rd makes the Genitive case to end in is, as { *Nub-is*.
Lapid-is.
Oper-is.
Parent-is.

The 4th makes the Genitive case to end in us, as *Grad-ús*.

The 5th makes the Genitive and Dative cases to end in . ei, as *Faci-ei*.

(1st DECLENSION makes the GENITIVE and DATIVE to end in *æ*.)

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom.	<i>Mus-æ, a song.</i>	Nom.	<i>Mus-æ, songs.</i>
Gen.	<i>Mus-æ, of a song.</i>	Gen.	<i>Mus-arum, of songs.</i>
Dat.	<i>Mus-æ, to a song.</i>	Dat.	<i>Mus-is, to songs.</i>
Acc.	<i>Mus-am, a song.</i>	Acc.	<i>Mus-as, songs.</i>
Voc.	<i>Mus-a, song.</i>	Voc.	<i>Mus-æ, songs.</i>
Abl.	<i>Mus-â, from a song.</i>	Abl.	<i>Mus-is, from songs.</i>

(2nd DECLENSION makes the GENITIVE to end in *i*.)

MAGISTER, a Master.		DOMINUS, a Lord.	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N. <i>Magist-er,</i>	<i>Magistr-i,</i>	N. <i>Domin-us,</i>	<i>Domin-i,</i>
G. <i>Magistr-i,</i>	<i>Magistr-orum,</i>	G. <i>Domin-i,</i>	<i>Domin-orum,</i>
D. <i>Magistr-o,</i>	<i>Magistr-is,</i>	D. <i>Domin-o,</i>	<i>Domin-is,</i>
A. <i>Magistr-um,</i>	<i>Magistr-os,</i>	A. <i>Domin-um,</i>	<i>Domin-os,</i>
V. <i>Magist-er,</i>	<i>Magistr-i,</i>	V. <i>Domin-e,</i>	<i>Domin-i,</i>
A. <i>Magistr-o.</i>	<i>Magistr-is.</i>	A. <i>Domin-o.</i>	<i>Domin-is.</i>

REGNUM, a Kingdom.

N. <i>Regn-um,</i>	A. <i>Regn-um,</i>	N. <i>Regn-a,</i>	A. <i>Regn-a,</i>
G. <i>Regn-i,</i>	V. <i>Regn-um,</i>	G. <i>Regn-orum,</i>	V. <i>Regn-a,</i>
D. <i>Regn-o,</i>	A. <i>Regn-o.</i>	D. <i>Regn-is,</i>	A. <i>Regn-is.</i>

Obs. The Nominative and Vocative cases are generally the same in both numbers; but *us* in the Nominative makes *e* in the Vocative. Proper names in *ius* make *i*, as *Georgius, Georgi*. So also *filius* and *genius* make *fili* and *geni*. *Deus*, God, makes *Deus* in the Vocative.

Most neuter Nouns are of the second and third declensions, and make the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative alike in both numbers; and in the plural these cases end in *a*; as, *regna, opera*.

(3rd DECLENSION makes the GENITIVE to end in *is*.)

NUBES, a Cloud.		LAPIS, a stone.	
N. <i>Nub-es,</i>	<i>Nub-es,</i>	N. <i>Lap-is,</i>	<i>Lap-id-es,</i>
G. <i>Nub-is,</i>	<i>Nub-ium,</i>	G. <i>Lap-id-is,</i>	<i>Lap-id-um,</i>
D. <i>Nub-i,</i>	<i>Nub-ibus,</i>	D. <i>Lap-id-i,</i>	<i>Lap-id-ibus,</i>
A. <i>Nub-em,</i>	<i>Nub-es,</i>	A. <i>Lap-id-em,</i>	<i>Lap-id-es,</i>
V. <i>Nub-es,</i>	<i>Nub-es,</i>	V. <i>Lap-is,</i>	<i>Lap-id-es,</i>
A. <i>Nub-e.</i>	<i>Nub-ibus.</i>	A. <i>Lap-id-e.</i>	<i>Lap-id-ibus.</i>

OPUS, a Work.		PARENS, a Parent.	
N. <i>Op-us,</i>	<i>Op-er-a,</i>	N. <i>Pa-rens,</i>	<i>Par-ent-es,</i>
G. <i>Op-er-is,</i>	<i>Op-er-um,</i>	G. <i>Par-ent-is,</i>	<i>Par-ent-um,</i>
D. <i>Op-er-i,</i>	<i>Op-er-ibus,</i>	D. <i>Par-ent-i,</i>	<i>Par-ent-ibus,</i>
A. <i>Op-us,</i>	<i>Op-er-a,</i>	A. <i>Par-ent-em,</i>	<i>Par-ent-es,</i>
V. <i>Op-us,</i>	<i>Op-er-a,</i>	V. <i>Par-ens,</i>	<i>Par-ent-es,</i>
A. <i>Op-er-e.</i>	<i>Op-er-ibus.</i>	A. <i>Par-ent-e.</i>	<i>Par-ent-ibus.</i>

Obs. *Lapis, Opus,* and *Parens*, and many others of the 3rd Declension, increase in the Genitive; *i. e.* have a syllable more in the Genitive than in the Nominative. Some ablatives of the 3rd Declension end in *e*, and others in *e* and *i*. Such Nouns make the Genitive plural in *ium*. When the Ablative singular ends in *e* only, the Genitive plural ends in *um*. But Nouns in *es* and *is* not increasing, form it in *ium*; as, *nubes, nubium*.

(4th DECLENSION makes GEN. in *ûs*.)

GRADUS, a Step.	
N. <i>Grad-us,</i>	<i>Grad-us,</i>
G. <i>Grad-ûs,</i>	<i>Grad-uum,</i>
D. <i>Grad-ûi,</i>	<i>Grad-ibus,</i>
A. <i>Grad-um,</i>	<i>Grad-us,</i>
V. <i>Grad-us,</i>	<i>Grad-us,</i>
A. <i>Grad-u.</i>	<i>Grad-ibus.</i>

(5th DECLENSION, GEN. and DAT. in *ei*.)

FACIES, a Face.	
N. <i>Faci-es,</i>	<i>Faci-es,</i>
G. <i>Faci-ei,</i>	<i>Faci-erum,</i>
D. <i>Faci-ei,</i>	<i>Faci-ebus,</i>
A. <i>Faci-em,</i>	<i>Faci-es,</i>
V. <i>Faci-es,</i>	<i>Faci-es,</i>
A. <i>Faci-e.</i>	<i>Faci-ebus.</i>

THE GENDERS OF NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE.

[The four next pages, which properly follow here, may be omitted, at first, at the discretion of the teacher. The rules should be said in the order of the figures, and it is hoped that the arrangement in columns will assist the learner in remembering the gender. The collections of Nouns may be useful as a Vocabulary, and also furnish examples for practice on the foregoing declensions.]

MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
<p>The Proper Names of MALES, as Mars, Cato ; RIVERS, as Tiberis, Oron- tes ; MONTHS, as October ; and WINDS, as Notus, Auster ; are masculine.</p>	<p>The Proper Names of FEMALES, as Juno, Anna ; COUNTRIES, as Græcia, Persis ; and ISLANDS, as Creta, Cy- prus, are feminine.</p>	<p>All Nouns ending in UM, and all INDECLINABLE Nouns, are neuter.</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">2. EXCEPTIONS.</p> <p>But <i>Sulmo</i>, a town in Italy, is masculine. <i>Argi</i> in the plural num- ber is masculine. <i>Anzur</i>, a town of Italy, .</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">1.</p> <p>The Proper Names of CITIES are feminine, as <i>Elis</i>, <i>Opus</i>, cities of Greece.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">.</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">3. EXCEPTIONS.</p> <p><i>Argos</i>, a city of Greece, in the singular, <i>Tibur</i>, and <i>Præneste</i>, towns in Italy, are neuter.</p> <p><i>Anzur</i> is both masculine and neuter.</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">2.</p> <p>But <i>spinus</i>, a blackthorn, <i>oleaster</i>, a wild olive, are masculine.</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">1.</p> <p>Names of TREES are feminine ; as, <i>alnus</i>, an alder ; <i>cedrus</i>, a cedar.</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">3.</p> <p><i>Siler</i>, an osier ; <i>cuber</i>, a cork-tree ; <i>thus</i>, a frankincense-tree ; <i>robur</i>, an oak ; <i>acer</i>, a maple-tree ; are neuter.</p>

Names of birds, beasts, and fishes, are of the Epicene gender, *i. e.* both the male and female are signified under one article ; as, *hic passer*, a sparrow ; *hæc aquila*, an eagle, both male and female.

MASCULINE.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. Nouns ending in *a*, and denoting the offices of men, are masculine; as, *scriba*, *a scribe*.
lanista, *a fencing-master*.
2. Nouns ending in *er* and *us*, not increasing, are masculine; as, *venter*, *ventris*, *the belly*.
annus, *anni*, *a year*.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. Nouns in *er*, *or*, and *os*, increasing long, are masculine; as, *crater*, *cratēris*, *a large bowl*.
conditor, *conditōris*, *a builder*.
heros, *herōis*, *a hero*.
2. Nouns of more than one syllable in *n*, increasing long, are masculine; as, *delphin*, *delphīnis*, *a dolphin*.
3. Nouns of bodily substance in *o*, increasing long, are masculine; as, *leo*, *leōnis*, *a lion*.

RULE III.

Nouns which INCREASE SHORT are generally masculine; as, *sanguis*, *sauguīnis*, *blood*.

FEMININE.

RULE I.

Nouns which do NOT INCREASE in the Genitive, that is, which have not more syllables in the Genitive than in the Nominative, are generally feminine.

RULE II.

Nouns which INCREASE LONG are generally feminine; as,

virtus, *virtūtis*, *virtue*.
pietas, *pietātis*, *piety*.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. All Nouns of more than two syllables in *go* and *do*, making *inis* short in the Genitive, are feminine; as, *dulcēdo*, *inis*, *sweetness*.
compāgo, *inis*, *a joint*.
2. Greek derivatives in *as*, *adis*, and *is*, *idis*, are feminine; as, *lampas*, *adis*, *a lamp*.
iaspis, *idis*, *a jasper*.

NEUTER.

EXCEPTIONS.

3. Nouns ending in *e*, and making the Genitive in *is*, are neuter; as,
mare, *maris*, *the sea*.
rete, *retis*, *a net*.

EXCEPTIONS.

4. Nouns of more than one syllable in *al* and *ar*, increasing long, are neuter; as,
capital, *capitālis*, *a veil*.
laquear, *laqueāris*, *a ceiling*.

EXCEPTIONS.

3. Nouns ending in *a*, *ar*, *us*, *put*, *en*, and *ur*, increasing short, are neuter; as,
problema, *ātis*, *a problem*.
jubar, *āris*, *a sunbeam*.
onus, *ēris*, *a burthen*.
caput, *ītis*, *the head*.
omen, *īnis*, *an omen*.
jecur, *jecōris*, *the liver*.
and jecinōris,

PARTICULAR EXCEPTIONS FROM THE FOREGOING RULES.

MASCULINE.

FEMININE.

NEUTER.

I. OF NOUNS NOT INCREASING.

verres, *a boar-pig*
 natalis, *a birth-day*
 aqualis, *a water-pot*
 lienis, *the spleen*
 orbis, *the world*
 callis, *a path*
 caulis, *a stalk*
 collis, *a hill*
 follis, *a pair of bellows*
 mensis, *a month*
 ensis, *a sword*
 fustis, *a club*
 funis, *a rope*
 panis, *bread*
 cenchris, *a speckled serpent*
 crinis, *the hair*
 ignis, *fire*
 cassis, *a net*
 fascis, *a faggot*
 torris, *a firebrand*
 sentis, *a thorn*
 piscis, *a fish*
 unguis, *a nail*
 vermis, *a worm*
 vectis, *a lever*
 postis, *a door-post*
 axis, *an axle-tree.*

Nouns derived from the
 Greek in *a* and *es*; as,
 athletes, athleta, *a wrestler*
 cometes, cometa, *a comet.*

Nouns in *us* which should have been Masculine.

humus, *the ground*
 domus, *a house*
 alvus, *the stomach*
 colus, *a distaff*
 ficus, *ús, a fig*
 acus, *ús, a needle*
 porticus, *ús, a porch*
 socrus, *ús, a mother-in-law*
 nurus, *ús, a daughter-in-law*
 tribus, *ús, a tribe*
 manus, *ús, a hand*
 idus, *uum, the ides*
 anus, *ús, an old woman*
 vannus, *a winnowing fan*

pelagus, *the sea*
 virus, *poison*
 vulgus, *{ the common
 people*
 (which is masculine or
 neuter).

Many Nouns derived from
 the Greek are feminine; as,

papȳrus, *{ the Egyptian
 flag, whence
 paper*
 diphthongus, *a diphthong*
 byssus, *fine linen*
 synodus, *an assembly*
 sapphirus, *a sapphire*
 Arctus, *{ the constella-
 tion of the
 Great and
 Little Bear.*

II. PARTICULAR EXCEPTIONS
INCREASING LONG.

sermo, *ónis, a discourse*
 torrens, *éntis, a torrent*
 oriens, *éntis, the east*
 bidens, *éntis, a fork*
 dodrans, *ántis, nine ounces*
 semis, *íssis, six ounces*
 gigas, *ántis, a giant*
 elephas, *ántis, an elephant*
 adamas, *ántis, a diamond*
 tapes, *étis, tapestry*
 lebes, *étis, a cauldron*
 magnes, *étis, a loadstone*
 meridies, *ei, mid-day*
 dies (in the plural), *days*
 hydrops, *ópis, the dropsy*
 thorax, *ácsis, a breastplate*
 vervex, *écis, a wether sheep*
 phoenix, *ícis, a phoenix*
 bombyx, *ýcis, a silkworm.*

III. PARTICULAR EXCEPTIONS INCREASING SHORT.

grando, *ínis, hail*
 compes, *édís, a fetter*
 fides, *éi, faith*
 teges, *étis, a covering*
 seges, *étis, standing corn*
 cuspis, *ídis, a point*
 cassis, *ídis, a helmet*
 arbor, *óris, a tree*
 hyems, *émis, winter*
 chlamys, *ýdis, a cloak.*
 cadaver, *éris, a dead body*
 verber, *éris, a blow*
 iter, *itinéris, a journey*
 piper, *pipéris, pepper*
 papaver, *éris, a poppy*
 cicero, *éris, vetches*
 tuber, *éris, a mushroom*
 æquor, *óris, the sea*
 marmor, *óris, marble.*

MASCULINE MONOSYLLABLES.

sal,	salis,	salt
sol,	solis,	the sun
ren,	renis,	the reins
splen,	splenis,	the spleen
vir,	viri,	a man
vas,	vadis,	a surety
as,	assis,	a pound weight
mas,	maris,	a male
pes,	pedis,	a foot
glis,	gliris,	a dormouse
mos,	moris,	a manner
flos,	floris,	a flower
ros,	roris,	the dew
mus,	muris,	a mouse
dens,	dentis,	a tooth
mons,	montis,	a mountain
pons,	pontis,	a bridge
fons,	fontis,	a fountain
grex,	gregis,	a flock
rex,	regis,	a king

Many Nouns are of doubtful gender ;

as,

dies (in the singular), a day.

Many are of the common gender, as the following :

auriga,	a charioteer
advēna,	a new comer
civis,	a citizen
extorris,	a banished person
hostis,	a foe
hospes, hospitis,	a host or hostess
juvēnis,	a young person
sodālis,	a companion
senex, senis,	an old person
testis,	a witness
verna,	{ a bondman or bondswoman
bos, bovis,	a bull or cow
dux, ducis,	a leader
hæres, hæreditis,	an heir or heiress
parens, parentis,	a parent
sacerdos, dōtis,	a priest or priestess
eques, equitis,	a rider
pedes, peditis,	a walker
exul, exilis,	an exile.

NEUTER MONOSYLLABLES.

mel,	mellis,	honey
fel,	fellis,	gall
lac,	lactis,	milk
far,	farris,	corn
ver,	veris,	the spring
æs,	æris,	copper
cor,	cordis,	the heart
os,	ossis,	a bone
os,	oris,	the mouth
vas,	vasis,	a vessel
pl. vasa, vasorum,		
rus,	ruris,	the country
jus,	juris,	law
thus,	thuris,	incense
crus,	cruris,	the shank
pus,	puris,	matter.

Some Nouns are irregular in gender ; thus,

jocus, a joke, and *locus*, a place, are masculine in the singular, but masculine or neuter in the plural.

rastrum, a rake, and *frænum*, a bridle, are masculine or neuter in the plural.

cælum, heaven, is masculine in the plural.

Many Nouns are indeclinable, as *fas*, justice, and *nihil*, nothing, which are used only in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative.

Cornu, a horn, *genu*, the knee, *instar*, size or magnitude, are also indeclinable ; so are all numerals from *quatuor*, four, to *centum*, a hundred.

Many are defective in case ; as, *vis*, *vis*, *vim*, *vi*, strength, making *vires*, *virium*, in the plural.

So Gen. *opis*, aid, *opem*, *ope* ; in the plural, *opes*, wealth.

Many have no singular number : as,

Bacchanalia, the feasts of Bacchus

(and the like.)

Philippi, a city of Macedonia

idus, iduum, the ides

calendæ, the calends

nonæ, the nones

manes, spirits

nuptiæ, a marriage

arma, arms

castra, a camp.

Some are of the 2nd and 4th Declension : as,

laurus, i or ūs, a laurel

quercus, i or ūs, an oak

cornus, i or ūs, a cornel

lacus, i or ūs, a lake, &c. &c.

NOUNS ADJECTIVE

Are of three kinds, and declined as in the following Examples.

I. Adjectives of three terminations.—BONUS, good.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. Bon-us,	bon-a,	bon-um.	N. Bon-i,	bon-æ,	bon-a.
G. Bon-i,	bon-æ,	bon-i.	G. Bon-orum,	bon-arum,	bon-orum.
D. Bon-o,	bon-æ,	bon-o.	D. Bon-is,		
A. Bon-um,	bon-am,	bon-um.	A. Bon-os,	bon-as,	bon-a.
V. Bon-e,	bon-a,	bon-um.	V. Bon-i,	bon-æ,	bon-a.
A. Bon-o,	bon-â,	bon-ô.	A. Bon-is.		

TENER, tender.

N. Ten-er,	tenē-ra,	tenē-rum.	N. Tenē-ri,	tenē-ræ,	tenē-ra.
G. Tene-ri,	tene-ræ,	tene-ri.	G. Tene-rorum,	tene-rarum,	tene-rorum.
D. Tene-ro,	tene-ræ,	tene-ro.	D. Tene-ris,		
A. Tene-rum,	tene-rum,	tene-rum.	A. Tene-ros,	tene-ras,	tene-ra.
V. Ten-er,	tene-ra,	tene-rum.	V. Tene-ri,	tene-ræ,	tene-ra.
A. Tene-ro,	tene-râ,	tene-ro.	A. Tene-ris.		

UNUS, one.

N. Un-us,	un-a,	un-um.	N. Un-i,	un-æ,	un-a.
G. Un-ius,			G. Un-orum,	un-arum,	un-orum.
D. Un-i,			D. Un-is,		
A. Un-um,	un-am,	un-um.	A. Un-os,	un-as,	un-a.
V. Un-e,	un-a,	un-um.	V. Un-i,	un-æ,	un-a.
A. Un-o,	un-â,	un-o.	A. Un-is.		

The Plural is used only with a substantive which has no singular.

Solus, alone ; *nullus*, none ; *alter*, the other ; *uter*, whether of the two, make the Gen. in *ius*, and Dat. in *i*. *Alius*, another, makes *alius*, with the *i* long, and in the neuter *aliud*.

II. TRISTIS, sad—of two terminations.

N. Trist-is,	trist-is,	trist-e.	N. Trist-es,	trist-es,	trist-ia.
G. Trist-is,			G. Trist-ium,		
D. Trist-i,			D. Trist-ibus,		
A. Trist-em,	trist-em,	trist-e.	A. Trist-es,	trist-es,	trist-ia.
V. Trist-is,	trist-is,	trist-e.	V. Trist-es,	trist-es,	trist-ia.
A. Trist-i.			A. Trist-ibus.		

The Genitive plural of these adjectives, declined like the 3rd Declension of Substantives, ends in *ium*; except Comparatives, which make it in *um*. Except also, *vetus*, old, which makes Neut. plural *vetera*, Gen. *veterum*; and *plus*, more, which generally makes *plura*, but sometimes *pluria*.

MELIOR, better.

N. Meli-or,	meli-or,	meli-us.	N. Meli-ores,	meli-ores,	meli-ora.
G. Meli-oris,			G. Meli-orum,		
D. Meli-ori,			D. Meli-oribus,		
A. Meli-orem,	meli-orem,	meli-us.	A. Meli-ores,	meli-ores,	meli-ora.
V. Meli-or,	meli-or,	meli-us.	V. Meli-ores,	meli-ores,	meli-ora.
A. Meli-ore or meli-ori.			A. Meli-oribus.		

III. FELIX, happy—of one termination.

N. Fel-is,			N. Feli-ces,	feli-ces,	feli-cia.
G. Feli-cis,			G. Feli-cium,		
D. Feli-ci,			D. Feli-cibus,		
A. Feli-cem,	feli-cem,	feli-is.	A. Feli-ces,	feli-ces,	feli-cia.
V. Fel-is,			V. Feli-ces,	feli-ces,	feli-cia.
A. Feli-ce or feli-ci.			A. Feli-cibus.		

PRUDENS, PRUDEN-tis, wise, of one termination, is similarly declined.

Note.—All Participles are declined like Nouns Adjective; the present participle in *ans* or *ens*, like *prudens*; the others in *us*, like *bonus*.

Ambō, both, and *Duo, two*, are thus declined in the plural number only :

N. Amb-o,	æ,	o,	both.	A. Amb-os,	as,	o,	both.
G. Amb-orum,	arum,	orum,	of both.	V. Amb-o,	æ,	o,	both.
D. Amb-obus,	abus,	obus,	to both.	A. Amb-obus,	abus,	obus,	{ from, by, or with both.

OF THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives have three degrees of comparison ; 1. the POSITIVE, 2. the COMPARATIVE, 3. the SUPERLATIVE. (See page 3.)

In Latin the Comparative is formed from the first case of the Positive that ends in *i*, by adding to it the syllable *or* in the Masculine and Feminine genders, and the syllable *us* in the Neuter; thus,

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
From <i>doctus</i> , learned, Gen. <i>docti</i> , is formed	M. & F. <i>docti-or</i> , } more Neuter <i>docti-us</i> , } learned.	
So from <i>brevi</i> , short, Dat. <i>brevi</i> , is formed	M. & F. <i>brevi-or</i> , } shorter. Neuter <i>brevi-us</i> , }	

The Latin Superlative is formed from the first case of the Positive that end in *i*, by adding to it the syllables, *ssimus*; as

From Gen. <i>docti</i> ,	is formed	<i>docti-ssimus</i> , most learned.
From Dat. <i>brevi</i> ,	is formed	<i>brevi-ssimus</i> , shortest.

Adjectives ending in *er* form the Superlative by adding the syllables *rimus* to the Nominative; as from

<i>tener</i> , tender,	is formed	<i>tener-rimus</i> , most tender.
------------------------	-----------	-----------------------------------

These five Adjectives, ending in *lis*, form their Superlative by changing *i* into *limus*; as,

<i>agilis</i> , active,	} make in the Superlative	<i>agil-limus</i> , most active.
<i>facilis</i> , easy,		<i>facil-limus</i> , easiest.
<i>gracilis</i> , slender,		<i>gracil-limus</i> , most slender.
<i>humilis</i> , humble,		<i>humil-limus</i> , most humble.
<i>similis</i> , like,		<i>simil-limus</i> , most like.

IRREGULARS.

bonus, good	melior, better	optimus, best
malus, bad	pejor, worse	pessimus, worst
magnus, great	major, greater	maximus, greatest
parvus, little	minor, less	minimus, least
multus, much	plus, more	plurimus, most
dives, rich	ditior, richer	ditissimus, richest
nequam, wicked	nequior, more wicked	nequissimus, most wicked
externus, outward	exterior, more outward	extremus or extimus, most outward
inferus, low	inferior, lower	infimus or imus, lowest
superus, high	superior, higher	supremus or summus, highest
intus, inward	interior, more inward	intimus, most inward
juvenis, young	junior, younger . . .	. . . has no superlative
senex, old	senior, older . . .	. . . has no superlative
These three Ad- jectives have no Positive. }	prior, former	primus, first
	propior, nearer	proximus, nearest
	ulterior, farther	ultimus, farthest.

Adjectives in *us pure*, i. e. *us* immediately preceded by a vowel, form their Comparatives and Superlatives by *magis*, more, and *maximè*, most : as,

<i>pius</i> , godly,	| <i>magis pius</i> , more godly | <i>maximè pius</i> , most godly *.
----------------------	---

* But *piissimus* is in use.

PRONOUNS.

Pronouns are either personal, adjective, or demonstrative. They are used instead of Nouns, and are fifteen in number; viz.

Ego, <i>I.</i>	Ipsē, <i>himself.</i>	Suus, <i>his.</i>
Tu, <i>thou or you.</i>	Iste, <i>that.</i>	Noster, <i>ours.</i>
Sui, <i>of himself.</i>	Hic, <i>this.</i>	Vester, <i>yours.</i>
Is, <i>he.</i>	Meus, <i>mine.</i>	Nostras, <i>of our country.</i>
Ille, <i>he.</i>	Tuus, <i>thine.</i>	Vestras, <i>of your country.</i>

To these may be added the compounds *egomet*, I myself; *tute*, thou thyself; *idem*, the same; also the relative *qui*, who or which; and its derivative *ujas*, *ujatis*, of what country.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
N. Ego,	<i>I.</i>	N. Nos,	<i>we.</i>
G. Mei,	<i>of me.</i>	G. Nostrum or nostri,	<i>of us.</i>
D. Mihi,	<i>to me.</i>	D. Nobis,	<i>to us.</i>
A. Me,	<i>me.</i>	A. Nos,	<i>us.</i>
V. Wanting.		V. Wanting.	
A. Me,	<i>from or by me.</i>	A. Nobis,	<i>from or by us.</i>

N. Tu,	<i>thou or you.</i>	N. Vos,	<i>ye or you.</i>
G. Tui,	<i>of thee or you.</i>	G. Vestrum or vestri,	<i>of you.</i>
D. Tibi,	<i>to thee or you.</i>	D. Vobis,	<i>to you.</i>
A. Te,	<i>thee or you.</i>	A. Vos,	<i>you.</i>
V. Tu,	<i>thou or you.</i>	V. Vos,	<i>ye or you.</i>
A. Te,	<i>from thee or you.</i>	A. Vobis,	<i>from you.</i>

ILLE, *he*; ILLA, *she*; ISTE, *that*; and IPSE, *he himself*, are thus declined:

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. ILLE,	illa,	illud.	N. ILLI,	illæ,	illa.
G. Illius,			G. Illorum,	illarum,	illorum.
D. Illi,			D. Illis,		
A. Illum,	illam,	illud.	A. Illos,	illas,	illa.
V. Wanting.			V. Wanting.		
A. Illo,	illâ,	illo.	A. Illis.		

But *ipse* makes *ipsum* in the Nom. and Acc. neut. sing.

Is, *he, she, or that*, and its compound IDEM, *the same*.

N. Is,	ea,	id.	N. Ir,	ese,	ea.
G. Ejus,			G. Eorum,	earum,	eorum.
D. Ei,			D. Iis or eis,		
A. Eum,	eam,	id.	A. Eos,	eas,	ea.
V. Wanting.			V. Wanting.		
A. Eo,	eâ,	eo.	A. Iis or eis.		

HIC, HÆC, HOC, *he, she, this.*

N. Hic,	hæc,	hoc.	N. Hi,	hæc,	hæc.
G. Hujus,			G. Horum,	harum,	horum.
D. Huic,			D. His,		
A. Hunc,	hanc,	hoc.	A. Hos,	has,	hæc.
V. Wanting.			V. Wanting.		
A. Hoc,	hac,	hoc.	A. His.		

The RELATIVE, Qui, quæ, quod, *who or which*.

M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Qui,	quæ,	quod, <i>who, or which.</i>	N. Qui,	quæ,	quæ.
G. Cujus,		<i>whose, of whom, or of which.</i>	G. Quorum,	quarum,	quorum.
D. Cui,		<i>to whom, or to which.</i>	D. Quibus, or	quæis.	
A. Quem, quam,	quod, <i>whom, or which.</i>		A. Quos, quas,	quæ.	
V. Wanting.			V. Wanting.		
A. Quo, quâ,	quo, or qui,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{from or by whom} \\ \text{or which.} \end{array} \right.$	A. Quibus, or	quæis.	

Similarly are declined its compounds—*quidam*, a certain one; *quivis* and *quilibet*, any one; *quicunque*, whosoever. Thus,

<i>Nom.</i> Quidam, quædam, quoddam.	<i>Gen.</i> cujusdam.	<i>Dat.</i> cuidam, &c.
<i>Nom.</i> Quivis, quævis, quodvis.	<i>Gen.</i> cujusvis.	<i>Dat.</i> cuivis, &c.
<i>Nom.</i> Quilibet, quælibet, quodlibet.	<i>Gen.</i> cujusbet.	<i>Dat.</i> cuilibet.

Qui, *quæ*, *quid*, or *quod*, who ? or, what ? is declined like *qui*, as are also *aliquis* and other compounds of *quis*; these make the most part make the Nominative feminine singular, and the Nominative and Accusative neuter plural in *quæ*; as,

N. sing. Siquis, siqua, siquid.
N. plur. Aliqui, aliquæ, aliqua.

Quisquis, whosoever, is thus declined :

Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom. Quisquis,	wanting.	quicquid, or quidquid.
Acc. Wanting.	wanting.	quicquid, or quidquid.
Abl. Quoquo,	quaquâ,	quoquo.

Sui is of both numbers and all genders, has no Nominative or Vocative, and is thus declined :—

SINGULAR AND PLURAL.

Nom. Wanting.
Gen. Sui, <i>of himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i>
Dat. Sibi, <i>to himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i>
Acc. Se, <i>himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i>
Voc. Wanting.
Abl. Se, <i>by himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i>

Idem, the same, is declined like *is*, *ea*, *id*, by adding the syllable *dem* to it :—thus, *idem* (for *isdem*), *eadem*, *idem*; Gen. *ejusdem*, &c. But in the Accusative singular and Genitive plural it takes *n* before *d*; as, *eundem*, *eorundem*.

Mens, *tuus*, *suius*, are declined like *bonus*; but *meus* makes *mî* in the Vocative singular masculine. (The Port Royal Grammar gives instances of it in the other genders.)

Tuus and *suius* have no Vocative.

Qui in the Ablative is of all genders.—PORT ROYAL GR.

Hic, *hæc*, *hoc*, is sometimes, but improperly, called an article. The Latins have no article.

Nostras, *vestras*, and *cujas*, are declined like *felix*: thus, Nom. *nostras*; Gen. *nostratis*, &c.

VERBS.

Verbs have generally two VOICES :

1. The ACTIVE, ending in *o*, as, *AMO*, I love.

2. The PASSIVE, ending in *or*, as, *AMOR*, I am loved.

Passive Verbs are formed from the active transitive, by changing *o* into *or*; as from *frango*, I break, is formed *frangor*, I am broken.

A DEPONENT VERB has a passive ending, as *sequor*; and an active meaning, as *I follow*.

Some few Verbs in *or* are INTRANSITIVE OR NEUTER, i. e. have an active meaning, but one which does not affect any following noun; as, *glorior*, I boast; *morior*, I die.

Deponent Verbs, whether transitive or not, are conjugated like passive Verbs, but have participles, gerunds, and supines, like Verbs active; as, *glorians*, *sequendi*, *scitatum*.

Verbs that have different persons are called PERSONAL; as, *ego amo*, I love; *tu amas*, thou lovest; and such as have not different persons are called IMPERSONAL; as, *tadet*, it irketh; *oportet*, it behoveth.

The tenses and moods have been explained before in the Outline of English Grammar. (See page 5.)

Latin Verbs have also three GERUNDS: viz.

One ending in *di*, signifying *of*, as, *amandi*, of loving.

One ending in *do*, signifying *in*, as, *amando*, in loving.

One ending in *dum*, signifying *to*, as, *amandum*, to love.

Verbs have two SUPINES. { The active, ending in *um*; as, *amatum*, to love.
The passive, in *u*; as, *amat u*, to be loved.

Verbs have four PARTICIPLES, { two Active; { the present active, ending in *ans* or *ens*; as, *amans*, loving; *docens*, teaching.
and { the future in *urus*; as, *amaturus*, about to love.
two Passive; { the perfect passive in *us*; as, *amatus*, loved.
the future in *dus*; as, *amandus*, to be loved.

Verbs have likewise two numbers, the singular and plural, and three persons in each number.

The 1st person is the person speaking.

The 2nd person is the person spoken to.

The 3rd person is the person or thing spoken of.—Thus,

Sing. *Ego amo*, I love.

Tu amas, thou lovest.

Ille amat, he, or it, loves.

Plural. *Nos amamus*, we love.

Vos amatis, ye love.

Illi amant, they love.

Observe, all Nouns are of the 3rd person in all cases except the Vocative, which is of the 2nd person.

Of the personal Pronouns *ego* and *nos* are of the first person, *tu* and *vos* of the second, and all the rest of the third; but the relative Pronoun *qui*, *who* or *which*, is of the same person as the antecedent or preceding Noun to which it refers.

THE VERB TO LOVE, ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense—*do, or am doing.*

- Sing.* I love, am loving, or do love,
Thou lovest, art loving, or dost love,
He loveth, is loving, or doth love.
- Plur.* We love, are loving, or do love,
Ye love, are loving, or do love,
They love, are loving, or do love.

Imperfect—*did, or was doing.*

- Sing.* I did love, or was loving,
Thou didst love, or wast loving,
He did love, or was loving.
- Plur.* We did love, or were loving,
Ye did love, or were loving,
They did love, or were loving.

Perfect—*have done.*

- Sing.* I loved, or have loved,
Thou lovedst, or hast loved,
He loved, or hath loved.
- Plur.* We loved, or have loved,
Ye loved, or have loved,
They loved, or have loved.

Pluperfect—*had done.*

- Sing.* I had loved,
Thou hadst loved,
He had loved.
- Plur.* We had loved,
Ye had loved,
They had loved.

Future—*shall or will do.*

- Sing.* I shall or will love,
Thou shalt or wilt love,
He shall or will love.
- Plur.* We shall or will love,
Ye shall or will love,
They shall or will love.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present (no First Person)—*let.*

- Sing.* Love thou, or do thou love,
Let him love.
- Plur.* Love we, or let us love,
Love ye, or do ye love,
Let them love.

POTENTIAL & SUBJUNC. MOODS.

Present—*may, can, would, should do.*

- Sing.* I may or can love,
Thou mayst or canst love,
He may or can love.
- Plur.* We may or can love,
Ye may or can love,
They may or can love.

Imperfect—*might, could, should do.*

- Sing.* I might or could love,
Thou mightst or couldst love,
He might or could love.
- Plur.* We might or could love,
Ye might or could love,
They might or could love.

Perfect—*should or may have done.*

- Sing.* I should have loved,
Thou shouldst have loved,
He should have loved.
- Plur.* We should have loved,
Ye should have loved,
They should have loved.

Pluperfect—*would, might, did, have done.*

- Sing.* I would have loved,
Thou wouldst have loved,
He would have loved.
- Plur.* We would have loved,
Ye would have loved,
They would have loved.

Future—*shall have done.*

- Sing.* I shall have loved,
Thou shalt have loved,
He shall have loved.
- Plur.* We shall have loved,
Ye shall have loved,
They shall have loved.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

- Present and } . to love.
Imperfect }
Perfect & } . to have loved.
Pluperfect }
Future . . . to be about to love.

Participle Present, loving.

Participle Future, about to love.

THE VERB *SUM*, I AM.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Pres. inf.</i>	<i>Partic. future.</i>
<i>SUM.</i>	<i>Fui.</i>	<i>Esse.</i>	<i>Futurus.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense— <i>am.</i>		Imperfect— <i>was.</i>	
<i>Sing. SUM,</i>	<i>I am,</i>	<i>Sing. ERAM,</i>	<i>I was,</i>
<i>Es,</i>	<i>thou art,</i>	<i>Eras,</i>	<i>thou wast,</i>
<i>Est,</i>	<i>he is.</i>	<i>Erat,</i>	<i>he was.</i>
<i>Plur. SUMUS,</i>	<i>we are,</i>	<i>Plur. ERAMUS,</i>	<i>we were,</i>
<i>Estis,</i>	<i>ye are,</i>	<i>Eratis,</i>	<i>ye were,</i>
<i>SUNT,</i>	<i>they are.</i>	<i>Erant,</i>	<i>they were.</i>
Perfect— <i>have.</i>		Pluperfect— <i>had.</i>	
<i>Sing. FUI,</i>	<i>I have been,</i>	<i>Sing. FUERAM,</i>	<i>I had been,</i>
<i>Fuisti,</i>	<i>thou hast been,</i>	<i>Fueras,</i>	<i>thou hadst been,</i>
<i>Fuit,</i>	<i>he hath been.</i>	<i>Fuerat,</i>	<i>he had been.</i>
<i>Plur. FUIMUS,</i>	<i>we have been,</i>	<i>Plur. FUERAMUS,</i>	<i>we had been,</i>
<i>Fuistis,</i>	<i>ye have been,</i>	<i>Fueratis,</i>	<i>ye had been,</i>
<i>Fuerunt or fuere,</i>	<i>they have been.</i>	<i>Fuerant,</i>	<i>they had been.</i>

Future—*shall or will.*

<i>Sing. ERO,</i>	<i>I shall or will be,</i>
<i>Eris,</i>	<i>thou shalt or wilt be,</i>
<i>Erit,</i>	<i>he shall or will be.</i>
<i>Plur. ERIMUS,</i>	<i>we shall or will be,</i>
<i>Eritis,</i>	<i>ye shall or will be,</i>
<i>Erunt,</i>	<i>they shall or will be.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense—*has no first person singular.*

<i>Sing. SIS, ES, ESTO,</i>	<i>be thou,</i>
<i>SIT, ESTO,</i>	<i>be he or let him be.</i>
<i>Plur. SIMUS,</i>	<i>be we or let us be,</i>
<i>SITIS, ESTE, ESTOTE,</i>	<i>be ye,</i>
<i>SINT, SUNTO,</i>	<i>be they or let them be.</i>

POTENTIAL AND SUBJUNCTIVE MOODS.

Present Tense—*may, can.*

<i>Sing. SIM,</i>	<i>I may or can be,</i>
<i>Sis,</i>	<i>thou mayst or canst be,</i>
<i>Sit,</i>	<i>he may or can be.</i>
<i>Plur. SIMUS,</i>	<i>we may or can be,</i>
<i>Sitis,</i>	<i>ye may or can be.</i>
<i>Sint,</i>	<i>they may or can be.</i>

Imperfect Tense—*might, could.*

<i>ESSEM or FOREM,</i>	<i>I might or could be,</i>
<i>Esset or fores,</i>	<i>thou mightst or couldst be,</i>
<i>Esset or foret,</i>	<i>he might or could be.</i>
<i>Essēmus or forēmus,</i>	<i>we might or could be,</i>
<i>Essētis or forētis,</i>	<i>ye might or could be,</i>
<i>Essent or forent,</i>	<i>they might or could be.</i>

Perfect—*may or should have.*

<i>Sing. FUERIM,</i>	<i>I may or should have been,</i>
<i>Fuēris,</i>	<i>thou mayst or shdst. have been,</i>
<i>Fuerit,</i>	<i>he may or should have been.</i>
<i>Plur. FUERIMUS,</i>	<i>we may or shd. have been,</i>
<i>Fueritis,</i>	<i>ye may or should have been,</i>
<i>Fuerint,</i>	<i>they may or shd. have been.</i>

Pluperfect—*might or would have.*

<i>FUISSEM,</i>	<i>I might or would have been,</i>
<i>Fuisses,</i>	<i>thou mightst or wouldst have been,</i>
<i>Fuisset,</i>	<i>he might or would have been.</i>
<i>Fuissēmus,</i>	<i>we might or would have been,</i>
<i>Fuissētis,</i>	<i>ye might or would have been,</i>
<i>Fuissent,</i>	<i>they might or would have been.</i>

Future Tense—*shall have been.*

<i>Sing. FUEBO,</i>	<i>I shall have been,</i>
<i>Fueris,</i>	<i>thou shalt have been,</i>
<i>Fuerit,</i>	<i>he shall have been.</i>
<i>Plur. FUERIMUS,</i>	<i>we shall have been,</i>
<i>Fueritis,</i>	<i>ye shall have been,</i>
<i>Fuerint,</i>	<i>they shall have been.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Imperfect Tense.

ESSE, to be.

Perfect and Pluperfect.

FUISSE, to have been.

Future.

FORE, or FUTURUM ESSE, to be about to be.

Participle Future in *BUS*.

FUTURUS, about to be.

CONJUGATIONS OF VERBS.

There are four conjugations of Latin Verbs, both in the active and passive voice, known by the vowel before *re* and *ris*, thus :

- 1.—The First has *a* LONG before *re* and *ris*, as *am-ā-re*, *am-ā-ris*.
- 2.—The Second has *e* LONG as *mon-ē-re*, *mon-ē-ris*.
- 3.—The Third has *ē* SHORT as *reg-ē-re*, *reg-ē-ris*.
- 4.—The Fourth has *i* LONG as *aud-i-re*, *aud-i-ris*.

VERBS ACTIVE in *O* are declined after these examples :

1st CONJUGATION, *Am-o*, *am-as*, *am-āvi**, *am-āre*; *amān-di*, *amān-do*, *amān-dum*; *amāt-um*, *amāt-u*; *am-ans*, *amatú-rus*: *to love*.

2nd CONJUGATION, *Mon-eo*, *mon-es*, *mon-ui*, *mon-ēre*; *monén-di*, *monén-do*, *monén-dum*; *monit-um*, *monit-u*; *mon-ens*, *monitú-rus*: *to advise*.

3rd CONJUGATION, *Reg-o*, *reg-is*, *rex-i*, *reg-ēre*; *regén-di*, *regén-do*, *regén-dum*; *rect-um*, *rect-u*; *reg-ens*, *rectú-rus*: *to rule or govern*.

4th CONJUGATION, *Aud-io*, *aud-is*, *aud-īvi*, *aud-īre*; *audién-di*, *audién-do*, *audién-dum*; *audīt-um*, *audīt-u*; *audi-ens*, *auditú-rus*: *to hear*.

VERBS PASSIVE in *OR* are thus declined :

1st CONJUGATION, *Am-or*, *am-āris* or *am-āre*, *amāt-us* sum or fui; *am-āri*; *amāt-us*, *amān-dus*: *to be loved*.

2nd CONJUGATION, *Mon-eor*, *mon-ēris* or *mon-ēre*, *monit-us* sum or fui; *mon-ēri*; *monit-us*, *monén-dus*: *to be advised*.

3rd CONJUGATION, *Reg-or*, *reg-ēris* or *reg-ēre*, *rect-us* sum or fui; *reg-i*; *rec-tus*, *regén-dus*: *to be ruled*.

4th CONJUGATION, *Aud-ior*, *aud-īris* or *aud-īre*, *audīt-us* sum or fui; *aud-īri*; *audīt-us*, *audién-dus*: *to be heard*.

The different times and modes of an action are denoted in Latin by certain known terminations, as shown in the opposite table. Thus the termination *o* signifies *I am*, or *I do something*. The termination *bam* signifies *I was*, *I did*, or *I was doing something*; the termination *rem*, *I might be* or *do*: as, *cale-o*, *I am warm*; *cale-bam*, *I was warm*; *can-o*, *I do sing*; *cane-bam*, *I did sing*; and *cane-rem*, *I might sing*.

The opposite table exhibits the terminations of the first person in all the tenses of the four conjugations, active and passive, with the corresponding signification.

* The last syllable but one, of words of more than two syllables, is to be pronounced long when accented, and short or quick when not accented.

ACTIVE VOICE.

	Terminations in Conjugation the				Significa- tion.
	1st.	2nd.	3rd.	4th.	
Pres. ends in	o,	eo,	o,	io,	{ I do or am doing.
	amo,	moneo,	rego,	audio,	
Imp.	abam,	ēbam,	ēbam,	iēbam,	{ I did or was doing.
Perf.	avi,	ui,	i,	ivi,	{ I have done.
Plup.	ēram,	..	..	..	{ I had done.
Fut.	abo,	ēbo,	am,	iam,	{ I shall or will do.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Conj.	1	2	3	4	
	a,	ē,	ē,	i,	{ do thou.
	ato,	ēto,	ēto,	ito,	

POTENTIAL OR SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Conj.	1	2	3	4	
Pres.	em,	eam,	am,	iam,	{ I may or can do.
Imp.	ārem,	ērem,	ērem,	irēm,	
Perf.	ērim,	.	.	.	{ I might, cld. or shd. do.
		.	.	.	{ I should or may have done.
Plup.	issem,	.	.	.	{ I would, cld. or might have done.
Fut.	ēro,	.	.	.	{ I shd. or will have done.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Conj.	1	2	3	4	
Pres. & Imp.	āre,	ēre,	ēre,	ire	{ to do.
Perf. & Plup.	isse,	.	.	.	
Fut.	urum esse or fuisse,	.	.	.	{ to be about to do.
Ger- unds.	di,	.	.	.	{ of doing.
	do,	.	.	.	{ in doing.
	dum,	.	.	.	{ to do.
Sup. A.	um,	.	.	.	{ to do.
P.	u,	.	.	.	{ to be done.
Part.	ans,	ens,	ens,	fens,	{ doing.
Fut.	rus,	.	.	.	{ about to do.

PASSIVE VOICE.

	Terminations in Conjugation the				Significa- tion.
	1st.	2nd.	3rd.	4th.	
	or,	eor,	or,	ior,	{ I am done.
	abar,	ēbar,	ēbar,	iēbar,	{ I was done.
	us	sum or fui,			{ I have been done. [done.
	us	eram or fueram,			{ I had been
	abor,	ēbor,	ar,	iar,	{ I shall or will be done.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

	1	2	3	4	
	āre,	ēre,	ēre,	ire,	{ be thou done.
	ator,	ētor,	ētor,	itor,	

POTENTIAL OR SUBJUNCT. MOOD.

	1	2	3	4	
	er,	ear,	ar,	iar,	{ I may or can be done.
	ārer,	ērer,	ērer,	irer,	
	us	sim or fuerim,			{ I mgt. cld. or shd. be done.
					{ I may have or shd. have been done.
	us	essem or fuissem,			{ I would, mgt. or cld. have been done.
	us	ero or fuero,			{ I shall have been done.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

	1	2	3	4	
	āri,	ēri,	i,	iri,	{ to be done.
	um	esse or fuisse,			{ to have been done.
	um	iri or fore,			{ to be about to be done.
	Part. Perf. us	.	.	.	{ done.
	Part. Fut. in dus	.	.	.	{ about to be done.

FIRST CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.—(*do, am.*)

- S. *Am-o, I love, am loving, or do love.*
am-as, thou lovest, &c.
am-at, he loveth, &c.
 P. *Am-ámus, we love, &c.*
am-átis, ye love, &c.
am-ant, they love, &c.

Imperfect.—(*did, was.*)

- S. *Am-ABAM, I did love, &c.*
am-ábas, thou didst love, &c.
am-ábat, he did love, &c.
 P. *Am-abámus, we did love, &c.*
am-abátis, ye did love, &c.
am-ábant, they did love, &c.

Perfect.—(*have.*)

- S. *Amáa-i, I loved or have loved,*
amar-ísti, thou lovedst, &c.
amar-it, he loved or hath loved.
 P. *Amar-imus, we loved, &c.*
amar-ístis, ye loved, &c.
amar-érunt or amav-ère, they loved, &c.

Pluperfect.—(*had.*)

- S. *Amar-ERAM, I had loved,*
amar-eras, thou hadst loved,
amar-erat, he had loved.
 P. *Amar-erámus, we had loved,*
amar-erátis, ye had loved,
amar-erant, they had loved.

Future.—(*shall or will.*)

- S. *Am-ABO, I shall or will love,*
am-ábis, thou shalt or wilt love,
am-ábit, he shall or will love.
 P. *Am-ábimus, we shall or will love,*
am-ábitis, ye shall or will love,
am-ábunt, they shall or will love.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense—has no first person singular.

- S. *Am-A, am-ATO, love thou, or do thou love.*
am-ET, am-ATO, let him love.
 P. *Am-EMUS, love we, or let us love.*
am-ATE, am-ATOTE, love ye, or do ye love.
am-ENT, am-ANTO, let them love.

POTENTIAL AND SUBJ. MOOD.

Present.—(*may, can, would, should.*)

- S. *Am-EM, I may or can love,*
am-es, thou mayst or canst love,
am-et, he may or can love.
 P. *Am-émus, we may or can love,*
am-étis, ye may or can love,
am-ent, they may or can love.

Imperfect.—(*might or could.*)

- S. *Am-AREM, I might or could love,*
am-áres, thou mightst or couldst love,
am-áret, he might or could love.
 P. *Am-arémus, we might or could love,*
am-arétis, ye might or could love,
am-arent, they might or could love.

Perfect.—(*should have, may have.*)

- S. *Amar-ERIM, I should have loved,*
amar-eris, thou shouldst have loved,
amar-erit, he should have loved.
 P. *Amar-erimus, we should have loved,*
amar-eritis, ye should have loved,
amar-erint, they should have loved.

Plup.—(*would, might, could have.*)

- S. *Amar-ISSEM, I would have loved,*
amar-isses, thou wouldst have loved,
amar-isset, he would have loved.
 P. *Amar-issémus, we would have loved,*
amar-issétis, ye would have loved,
amar-issent, they would have loved.

Future Tense.—(*shall have.*)

- S. *Amar-ERO, I shall have loved,*
amar-eris, thou shalt have loved,
amar-erit, he shall have loved.
 P. *Amar-erimus, we shall have loved,*
amar-eritis, ye shall have loved,
amar-erint, they shall have loved.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. & Imperf., *Am-ARE, to love.*
 Perf. & Plup., *amar-ISSE, to have loved.*
 Fut., *amatu-RUM ESSE, to be about to love.*

Gerunds, { *aman-DI, of loving.*
aman-DO, in loving.
aman-DUM, to love.

Supines, { Act. *amat-UM, to love.*
 Pass. *amat-U, to be loved.*

Participles, { Pres. *am-ANS, loving.*
 Fut. in *RUS, amátu-RUS,*
about to love.

FIRST CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.—(*am.*)

S. AMOR, *I am loved,*
am-áris or am-áre,
am-átur.

P. Am-ámur,
am-ámini,
am-ántur.

Imperfect.—(*was.*)

S. Am-ABAR, *I was loved.*
am-abáris, or am-abáre,
am-abátur.

P. Am-abámur,
am-abámini,
am-abántur.

Perfect.—(*have been.*)

S. Amát-US SUM } *I have been loved,*
or FUI,
amat-us es or fuisti,
amat-us est or fuit.

P. Amát-i sumus or fuimus,
amat-i estis or fuistis,
amat-i sunt, fuérunt, or fuére.

Pluperfect.—(*had been.*)

S. Amát-US ERAM } *I had been loved,*
or FUERAM,
amat-us eras or fueras,
amat-us erat or fuerat.

P. Amát-i erámus or fuerámus,
amat-i erátis or fuerátis,
amat-i erant or fuerant.

Future.—(*shall or will be.*)

S. Am-ABOR, *I shall or will be loved,*
am-áberis or am-ábere,
am-ábitur.

P. Am-ábimur,
am-abímini,
am-abúntur.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present—no 1st person singular.

S. Am-ARE, AMATOR, *be thou loved,*
am-ETUR, am-ATOR, let him be loved.

P. Am-EMUR, *let us be loved,*
am-AMINI, am-AMINOR, be ye loved,
am-ENTUR, am-ANTOR, let them be loved.

POTENTIAL & SUBJ. MOODS.

Present.—(*may, can, would, should be.*)

S. Am-ER, *I may or can be loved,*
am-éris or am-ére,
am-étur.

P. Am-émur,
am-émini,
am-éntur.

Imperfect.—(*might, could, should be.*)

S. Am-ARER, *I might or could be loved,*
am-aréris or am-arére,
am-arétur.

P. Am-arémur,
am-arémini,
am-aréntur.

Perfect.—(*may, should have been.*)

S. Amát-US SIM } *I should have been*
or FUERIM, } *loved,*
amat-us sis or fueris,
amat-us sit or fuerit.

P. Amát-i simus or fuerimus,
amat-i sitis or fueritis,
amat-i sint or fuerint.

Pluperfect.—(*might, cld., wd. have been.*)

S. Amát-US ESSEM } *I would have been*
or FUISSEM, } *loved,*
amat-us esses or fuisses,
amat-us esset or fuisset.

P. Amát-i essémus or fuissémus,
amat-i essétis or fuissétis,
amat-i essent or fuissent.

Future.—(*shall or will have been.*)

S. Amát-US ERO } *I shall have been*
or FUERO, } *loved,*
amat-us eris or fueris,
amat-us erit or fuerit.

P. Amát-i erimus or fuerimus,
amat-i eritis or fueritis,
amat-i erunt or fuerint.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Imperfect, Am-ARI, *to be loved.*Perfect and Pluperfect, amát-UM ESSE or FUISSE, *to have been loved.*Future, amát-UM IRI, *to be about to be loved.*

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect, amát-US, *loved.*Future in DUS, amán-DUS, *to be loved.*

SECOND CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.—(*do, am.*)

- S. *Mon-eo, I advise, &c.*
mon-es,
mon-et.
 P. *Mon-émus,*
mon-étis,
mon-ent.

Imperfect.—(*did, was.*)

- S. *Mon-ébam, I did advise, &c.*
mon-ébas,
mon-ébat.
 P. *Mon-ebámus,*
mon-ebátis,
mon-ebant.

Perfect.—(*have.*)

- S. *Monu-i, I advised, or have advised.*
monu-ísti,
monu-it.
 P. *Monu-imus,*
monu-ístis,
monu-érunt or monu-ére.

Pluperfect.—(*had.*)

- S. *Monu-eram, I had advised,*
monu-eras,
monu-erat.
 P. *Monu-erámus,*
monu-erátis,
monu-erant.

Future.—(*shall or will.*)

- S. *Moné-bo, I shall or will advise,*
moné-bis,
moné-bit.
 P. *Moné-bimus,*
moné-bitis,
moné-bunt.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present—has no 1st person singular.

- S. *Mon-é, mon-éto, advise thou, or do*
thou advise.
mon-eat, mon-eto, let him advise.
 P. *Mon-eamus, advise we, or let us advise.*
mon-éte, mon-etote, advise ye, or do
ye advise.
mon-eant, mon-ento, let them advise.

POTENTIAL & SUBJ. MOODS.

Present.—(*may, can, would, should.*)

- S. *Mone-am, I may or can advise,*
mone-as,
mone-at.
 P. *Mone-ámus,*
mone-átis,
mone-ant.

Imperfect.—(*might, could.*)

- S. *Mone-rem, I might or could advise,*
mone-rea,
mone-ret.
 P. *Mone-rémus,*
mone-rétis,
mone-rent.

Perfect.—(*may have, should have.*)

- S. *Monu-erim, I should have advised,*
monu-eris,
monu-erit.
 P. *Monu-erimus,*
monu-eritis,
monu-erint.

Pluperfect.—(*would, might, could have.*)

- S. *Monu-issem, I would have advised,*
monu-isses,
monu-isset.
 P. *Monu-issémus,*
monu-issétis,
monu-issent.

Future.—(*shall have.*)

- S. *Monu-ero, I shall have advised,*
monu-eris,
monu-erit.
 P. *Monu-erimus,*
monu-eritis,
monu-erint.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Imperfect, *Mon-ere, to advise.*Perfect and Pluperfect, *monu-isse, to have advised.*Future, *monitú-rum esse, to be about to advise.*Gerunds, { *monén-di, of advising.*
monén-do, in advising.
*monén-dum, to advise.*Supines, { Active, *monit-um, to advise.*
 Passive, *monit-u, to be advised.*Partic. { Present, *mon-ens, advising.*
 Future in *rus, monitú-rus, about to advise.*

SECOND CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.—(*am.*)

- S. *Mon-eor, I am advised,*
mon-eris or mon-ére,
mon-étur.
 P. *Mon-émur,*
mon-émini,
mon-éntur.

Imperfect.—(*was.*)

- S. *Mon-ebat, I was advised,*
mon-ebáris or mon-ebáre,
mon-ebátur.
 P. *Mon-ebámur,*
mon-ebámini,
mon-ebántur.

Perfect.—(*have been.*)

- S. *Monit-us sum or fui, I have been advised,*
monit-us es or fuisti,
monit-us est or fuit.
 P. *Monit-i sumus or fuimus,*
monit-i estis or fuistis,
monit-i sunt, fuerunt, or fuére.

Pluperfect.—(*had been.*)

- S. *Monit-us eram or fueram, I had been advised,*
monit-us eras or fueras,
monit-us erat or fuerat.
 P. *Monit-i erámus or fuerámus,*
monit-i erátis or fuerátis,
monit-i erant or fuerant.

Future.—(*shall or will be.*)

- S. *Mon-ébor, I shall or will be advised,*
mon-éberis or mon-ébere,
mon-ébitur.
 P. *Mon-ébmur,*
mon-ébmini,
mon-ébúntur.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present—no 1st person singular.

- S. *Mon-ere, mon-etor, be thou advised,*
mon-eatur, mon-etor, let him be advised.
 P. *Mon-eamur, let us be advised,*
mon-emini, mon-eminor, be ye advised,
mon-eantur, mon-entor, let them be advised.

POTENTIAL & SUBJ. MOODS.

Present.—(*may, can, would, should be.*)

- S. *Mon-eat, I may or can be advised,*
mon-eáris or mon-eáre,
mon-eátur.
 P. *Mon-eámur,*
mon-eámini,
mon-eántur.

Imperfect.—(*might, could, should be.*)

- S. *Mon-éret, I might or could be advised,*
mon-eréris or mon-erére,
mon-erétur.
 P. *Mon-erémur,*
mon-erémini,
mon-eréntur.

Perfect.—(*may, should have been.*)

- S. *Monit-us sim or fuerim, I should have been advised,*
monit-us sis or fueris,
monit-us sit or fuerit.
 P. *Monit-i simus or fuerimus,*
monit-i sitis or fueritis,
monit-i sint or fuerint.

Pluperfect.—(*might, old., wld. have been.*)

- S. *Monit-us essem or fuissem, I would have been advised,*
monit-us esses or fuisses,
monit-us esset or fuisset.
 P. *Monit-i essémus or fuissémus,*
monit-i essétis or fuissétis,
monit-i essent or fuissent.

Future.—(*shall have been.*)

- S. *Monit-us ero or fuero, I shall have been advised,*
monit-us eris or fueris,
monit-us erit or fuerit.
 P. *Monit-i erímus or fuerímus,*
monit-i erítis or fuerítis,
monit-i erunt or fuerint.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Imperfect, *Mon-eri, to be advised.*Perfect and Pluperfect, *monit-um esse or fuisset, to have been advised.*Future, *monit-um iri, to be about to be advised.*

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect, *monit-us, advised.*Fut. in *dus, monén-dus, to be advised.*

THIRD CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.—(*do, am.*)

- S. *Reg-o, I rule, &c.*
reg-is,
reg-it.
 P. *Reg-imus,*
reg-itis,
reg-unt.

Imperfect.—(*did, was.*)

- S. *Regé-BAM, I did rule,*
regé-bas,
regé-bat.
 P. *Rege-bámus,*
rege-bátis,
regé-bant.

Perfect.—(*have.*)

- S. *Rez-i, I have ruled,*
rez-isti,
rez-it.
 P. *Rez-imus,*
rez-istis,
rez-érunt or rez-ére.

Pluperfect.—(*had.*)

- S. *Rez-ERAM, I had ruled,*
rez-eras,
rez-erat.
 P. *Rez-erámus,*
rez-erátis,
rez-erant.

Future.—(*shall or will rule.*)

- S. *Reg-AM, I shall or will rule,*
reg-es,
reg-et.
 P. *Reg-émus,*
reg-étis,
reg-ent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present—no 1st person singular.

- S. *Reg-e, reg-ITO, rule thou, or do thou rule,*
reg-AT, reg-ITO, let him rule.
 P. *Reg-AMUS, rule we, or let us rule.*
reg-ITE, reg-ITOTE, rule ye, or do ye rule.
reg-ANT, reg-UNTO, let them rule.

POTENTIAL & SUBJ. MOODS.

Present.—(*may, can, would, should.*)

- S. *Reg-AM, I may or can rule,*
reg-as,
reg-at.
 P. *Reg-ámus,*
reg-átis,
reg-ant.

Imperfect.—(*might, could.*)

- S. *Reg-EREM, I might or could rule,*
reg-eres,
reg-eret.
 P. *Reg-erémus,*
reg-erétis,
reg-erent.

Perfect.—(*should have, may have.*)

- S. *Rez-ERIM, I should have ruled,*
rez-eris,
rez-erit.
 P. *Rez-erimus,*
rez-eritis,
rez-erint.

Pluperfect.—(*would, might, could have.*)

- S. *Rez-ISSEM, I would have ruled,*
rez-isses,
rez-isset.
 P. *Rez-issémus,*
rez-issétis,
rez-issent.

Future.—(*shall have.*)

- S. *Rez-ERO, I shall have ruled,*
rez-eris,
rez-erit.
 P. *Rez-erimus,*
rez-eritis,
rez-erint.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Imperfect, *Reg-ERE, to rule.*Perfect and Pluperfect, *rez-ISSE, to have ruled.*Future, *rectú-BUM ESSE, to be about to rule.*

Gerunds, { *regén-DI, of ruling.*
regén-DO, in ruling.
regén-DUM, to rule.

Supines, { Active, *rect-UM, to rule.*
 Passive, *rect-U, to be ruled.*

Particip. { Present, *reg-ENS, ruling.*
 Future in *BUS, rectú-BUS,*
about to rule.

THIRD CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.—(*am.*)

- S. *Reg-or, I am ruled,*
reg-eris or reg-ere,
reg-itur.
 P. *Reg-imur,*
reg-imini,
reg-untur.

Imperfect.—(*was.*)

- S. *Reg-ebat, I was ruled,*
reg-ebáris or reg-ebáre,
reg-ebátur.
 P. *Reg-ebámur,*
reg-ebámini,
reg-ebántur.

Perfect.—(*have been.*)

- S. *Rect-us sum or fui, I have been ruled,*
rect-us es or fuisti,
rect-us est or fuit.
 P. *Rect-i sumus or fuimus,*
rect-i estis or fuistis,
rect-i sunt, fuerunt, or fuére.

Pluperfect.—(*had been.*)

- S. *Rect-us eram or fueram, I had been ruled,*
rect-us eras or fueras,
rect-us erat or fuerat.
 P. *Rect-i erámus or fuerámus,*
rect-i erátis or fuerátis,
rect-i erant or fuerant.

Future.—(*shall or will be.*)

- S. *Reg-ar, I shall or will be ruled,*
reg-eris or reg-ere,
reg-étur.
 P. *Reg-émur,*
reg-émini,
reg-éntur.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present—no 1st person singular.

- S. *Reg-ere, reg-itor, be thou ruled,*
reg-atur, reg-itor, let him be ruled.
 P. *Reg-amur, let us be ruled,*
reg-imini, reg-iminor, be ye ruled,
reg-antur, reg-untor, let them be ruled.

POTENTIAL & SUBJ. MOODS.

Present.—(*may, can, would, should be.*)

- S. *Reg-ar, I may or can be ruled,*
reg-áris or reg-áre,
reg-átur.
 P. *Reg-ámur,*
reg-ámini,
reg-ántur.

Imperfect.—(*might, could, should be.*)

- S. *Reg-erér, I might or could be, &c.*
reg-erérís or reg-erére,
reg-erétur.
 P. *Reg-erémur,*
reg-erémini,
reg-eréntur.

Perfect.—(*may, should have been.*)

- S. *Rect-us sim or fuerim, I may have been ruled,*
rect-us sis or fueris,
rect-us sit or fuerit.
 P. *Rect-i simus or fuerimus,*
rect-i sitis or fueritis,
rect-i sint or fuerint.

Pluperfect.—(*might, could, would have been.*)

- S. *Rect-us essem or fuisset, I would have been ruled,*
rect-us esses or fuisses,
rect-us esset or fuisset.
 P. *Rect-i essémus or fuissémus,*
rect-i essétis or fuissétis,
rect-i essent or fuissent.

Future.—(*shall or will have been.*)

- S. *Rect-us ero or fuero, I shall have been ruled,*
rect-us eris or fueris,
rect-us erit or fuerit.
 P. *Rect-i erimus or fuerimus,*
rect-i eritis or fueritis,
rect-i erunt or fuerint.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

- Present and Imperfect, *Reg-i, to be ruled,*
 Perfect and Pluperfect, *rect-um esse or fuisse, to have been ruled.*
 Future, *rect-um iri, to be about to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLES.

- Perfect, *rect-us, ruled.*
 Future in *dus, regén-dus, to be ruled.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.—(*do, am.*)

- S. *Aud-io, I hear, &c.*
aud-is,
aud-it.
 P. *Aud-imus,*
aud-itis,
aud-iunt.

Imperfect.—(*did, was.*)

- S. *Audí-bam, I did hear, or, &c.*
audí-bas,
audí-bat.
 P. *Audí-bámus,*
audí-bátis,
audí-bant.

Perfect.—(*have.*)

- S. *Audí-i, I have heard,*
audí-isti,
audí-it.
 P. *Audí-imus,*
audí-istis,
audí-erunt or audí-ére.

Pluperfect.—(*had.*)

- S. *Audí-eram, I had heard,*
audí-eras,
audí-erat.
 P. *Audí-erámus,*
audí-erátis,
audí-erant.

Future.—(*shall or will.*)

- S. *Audí-am, I shall or will hear,*
audí-es,
audí-et.
 P. *Audí-émus,*
audí-étis,
audí-ent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present—no 1st person singular.

- S. *Aud-i, aud-íto, hear thou, or do thou hear,*
aud-íat, aud-íto, let him hear.
 P. *Aud-íamus, hear we, or let us hear.*
aud-íte, aud-ítote, hear ye, or do ye hear.
aud-íant, aud-íunto, let them hear.

POTENTIAL & SUBJ. MOODS.

Present.—(*may, can, would, should.*)

- S. *Audí-am, I may or can hear,*
audí-as,
audí-at.
 P. *Audí-ámus,*
audí-átis,
audí-ant.

Imperfect.—(*might, could, should.*)

- S. *Audí-rem, I might or could hear,*
audí-res,
audí-ret.
 P. *Audí-rémus,*
audí-rétis,
audí-rent.

Perfect.—(*should have, may have.*)

- S. *Audí-erim, I should have heard,*
audí-eris,
audí-erit.
 P. *Audí-erimus,*
audí-eritis,
audí-erint.

Pluperfect.—(*would, might, could have.*)

- S. *Audí-issem, I would have heard,*
audí-isses,
audí-isset.
 P. *Audí-issémus,*
audí-issétis,
audí-issent.

Future.—(*shall have.*)

- S. *Audí-ero, I shall have heard,*
audí-eris,
audí-erit.
 P. *Audí-erimus,*
audí-eritis,
audí-erint.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Imperfect, *Aud-íre, to hear.*Perfect and Pluperfect, *audí-isse, to have heard.*Future, *audí-tú-rum esse, to be about to hear.*Gerunds, { *audíen-di, of hearing.*
audíen-do, in hearing.
*audíen-dum, to hear.*Supines, { Active, *audí-tum, to hear.*
 Passive, *audí-tu, to be heard.*Particip. { Present, *audí-ens, hearing.*
 Future in *rus, audí-tú-rus,*
about to hear.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.—(am.)

S. *Aud-ior, I am heard,*
aud-iris or aud-ire,
*aud-itur.*P. *Aud-îmur,*
aud-îmini,
aud-iântur.

Imperfect.—(was.)

S. *Aud-iebar, I was heard,*
aud-iebâris or aud-iebâre,
*aud-iebâtur.*P. *Aud-iebâmur,*
aud-iebâmini,
aud-iebântur.

Perfect.—(have been.)

S. *Audit-us sum or fui, I have been*
heard,
audit-us es or fuisti,
*audit-us est or fuit.*P. *Audit-i sumus or fuimus,*
audit-i estis or fuistis,
audit-i sunt, fuerunt, or fuere.

Pluperfect.—(had been.)

S. *Audit-us eram or fueram, I had*
been heard,
audit-us eras or fueras,
*audit-us erat or fuerat.*P. *Audit-i erâmus or fuerâmus,*
audit-i erâtis or fuerâtis,
audit-i erant or fuerant.

Future.—(shall or will be.)

S. *Aud-iar, I shall or will be heard,*
aud-iêris or aud-iêre,
*aud-iêtur.*P. *Aud-iémur,*
aud-iémini,
aud-iéntur.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present—no 1st person singular.

S. *Aud-ire, aud-itor, be thou heard,*
*aud-iatur, aud-itor, let him be heard.*P. *Aud-iamur, let us be heard,*
aud-imini, aud-iminor, be ye heard,
aud-iantur, aud-iuntor, let them be
heard.

POTENTIAL & SUBJ. MOODS.

Present.—(may, can, would, should be.)

S. *Aud-iar, I may or can be heard,*
aud-iâris or aud-iâre,
*aud-iâtur.*P. *Aud-iâmur,*
aud-iâmini,
aud-iântur.

Imperfect.—(might, could, should be.)

S. *Aud-irer, I might or could be heard,*
aud-irêris or aud-irêre,
*aud-irêtur.*P. *Aud-irêmur,*
aud-irêmini,
aud-irêntur.

Perfect.—(may, should have been.)

S. *Audit-us sim or fuerim, I should have*
been heard,
audit-us sis or fueris,
*audit-us sit or fuerit.*P. *Audit-i simus or fuerimus,*
audit-i sitis or fueritis,
audit-i sint or fuerint.

Pluperfect.—(might, old., wd. have been.)

S. *Audit-us essem or fuissem, I would*
have been heard,
audit-us esses or fuisses,
*audit-us esset or fuisset.*P. *Audit-i essêmus or fuissêmus,*
audit-i essêtis or fuissêtis,
audit-i essent or fuissent.

Future.—(shall or will have been.)

S. *Audit-us ero or fuero, I shall have*
been heard,
audit-us eris or fueris,
*audit-us erit or fuerit.*P. *Audit-i erimus or fuerimus,*
audit-i eritis or fueritis,
audit-i erunt or fuerint.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Imperfect, *Aud-iri, to be*
*heard.*Perfect and Pluperfect, *audit-um esse*
*or fuisse, to have been heard.*Future, *audit-um iri, to be about to be*
heard.

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect, *audit-us, heard.*Fut. in *dus, audiên-dus, to be heard.*

FORMATION OF THE TENSES OF VERBS REGULAR.

ACTIVE—INDICATIVE.

The present tense is the theme or foundation of all other tenses ; as, *amo, moneo, rego, audio*.

The imperfect is formed from the present, by changing *o*, in the 1st conjugation, into *abam*, in the 2nd into *bam*, in the 3rd and 4th into *ebam* :

	1	2	3	4
as {	amo	moneo	rego	audio
	amabam	monebam	regebam	audiebam.

The perfect is formed variously from the present, the rules for which will be given, page 34.

Five tenses are formed from the perfect indicative ; namely, the pluperfect indicative ; the perfect, pluperfect, and future potential ; and the perfect infinitive. Thus from *amari* are formed *amaveram, amaverim, amavissem, amavero, amavisse*. (See opposite figure.)

The future is formed from the present, by changing *o* into *abo*, in the 1st conjugation, into *bo* in the 2nd, and into *am* in the 3rd and 4th :

	1	2	3	4
as {	amo	moneo	rego	audio
	amabo	monebo	regam	audiam.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

The present, which is its only tense, is formed from the present indicative by changing *o*, in the 1st conjugation, into *a* ; in the 3rd, by changing *o* and *io* into *e* ; and by taking *o* away in the 2nd and 4th. It has two forms, except in the 1st person plural.

	1	2	3	4
as {	amo	moneo	rego	audio
	ama	mone	rege	audi.

POTENTIAL AND SUBJUNCTIVE MOODS.

The present tense is formed from the present indicative, by changing *o*, in the 1st conjugation, into *em* ; and in the 2nd, 3rd, and 4th into *am* :

	1	2	3	4
as {	amo	moneo	rego	audio
	amem	moneam	regam	audiam.

The imperfect is formed from the present, by changing *o* into *arem*, in the 1st conjugation, by changing *o* or *io* into *erem* in the 3rd, and *o* into *rem* in the 2nd and 4th :

	1	2	3	4
as {	amo	moneo	rego	audio
	amarem	monerem	regërem	fugio
			fugërem	audirem.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

The present is formed from the present indicative, by changing *o*, in the 1st conjugation, into *are* ; in the 2nd and 4th into *re* ; and in the 3rd by changing *o* or *io* into *ère* :

	1	2	3	4
as {	amo	moneo	rego	audio
	amare	monere	regère	fugio
			fugère	audire.

PASSIVE.

From the active tenses in *o*, the corresponding passive tenses are formed by adding *r* to them, as *amabo, amabor* ; and from the active tenses in *m*, the passive are formed by changing *m* into *r*, as *regërem, regërer* ; or they may be all formed immediately from the present active, as the active tenses were themselves.

The imperative passive is like the infinitive active.

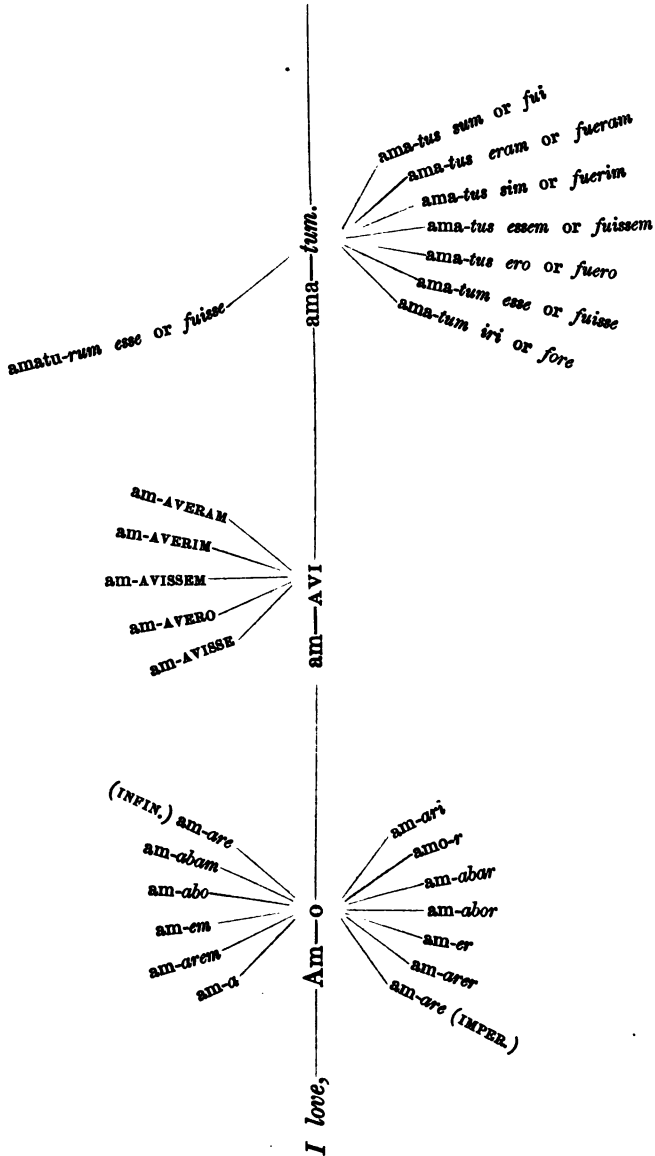
The present infinitive is formed from the infinitive active, by changing *e* in the 1st, 2nd, and 4th conjugations into *i*, and in the 3rd by changing *ère* into *i* :

	1	2	3	4
as {	amare	monère	regère	audire
	amari	moneri	regi	audiri.

The perfect and pluperfect of all moods, and the future subjunctive, are formed from the supine by changing *m* into *s*, and adding certain tenses of the Verb *sum* ; as from *amatum, amatus* *sum* or *fui, amatus essem* or *fuissem*.

ACTIVE TENSES.

PASSIVE TENSES.



THE FORMATION OF THE PRETERPERFECT TENSE.

THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

o, as, in the present tense, makes the perfect in *avi*; *as*,
amo, amas, amavi, to love.

THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

eo, es, makes the perfect in *ui*; *as*,
monceo, mones, monui, to advise.
l before *geo* makes *si*; *as*,
indulgeo, indulsi, to indulge.
r before *geo* makes *si*; *as*,
urgeo, urai, to urge.
veo makes *vi*; *as*,
faveo, favi, to favour.

THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

bo makes *bi*, *as lambo, lambi*, to lick
co *ci*, *vinco, vici*, conquer
do *di*, *mando, mandi*, champ
quo *qui*, *linquo, liqui*, leave
to *ti*, *verto, verti*, turn
ecto *exi*, *flecto, flexi*, bend
vo *vi*, *volvo, volvi*, roll
go } *xi*, *jungo, junxi*, join
ho } *traho, traxi*, draw
r bef. go *si*, *spargo, sparsi*, sprinkle
lo } *colo, colui*, till
mo } *ui*, *vomo, vomui*, vomit
xo } *texo, texui*, weave
uo } *statuo, statui*, place
no } *sino, sivi*, suffer
ro } *vi*, *sero, sevi*, sow
aco } *pasco, pavi*, feed
po *pei*, *scalpo, scalpsi*, scratch
so *sivi*, *arcesso, arcessivi*, fetch
cio *ci*, *facio, feci*, make
dio *di*, *fodio, fodi*, dig
gio *gi*, *fugio, fugi*, fly
pio *pi*, *capio, cepi*, take
rio *ri*, *pario, peper*, produce
tio *asi*, *quatio, quassi*, shake.

N. B. *Quassi* is used only in composition.

THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

io, is, makes the perfect in *ivi*; *as*,
scio, scis, scivi, to know.

Irregular Perfects.

crepo, cubo, do, domo, frico, lavo, juvo, mico,	crepui, cubui, dedi, domui, fricui, lavi, juvi, micui,	to crack lie down give tame rub wash help shine	neco, plico, seco, sono, sto, tono, veto,	necui, plicui, secui, sonui, steti, tonui, vetui,	to kill fold cut sound stand thunder forbid
ardeo, augeo, cieo, frigeo, fleo, hæreo, jubeo, luceo, lugeo, manco, mulgeo, mulceo, mordeo,	arsi, auxi, civi, frixi, flevi, hæssi, jussi, luxi, luxi, mansi, mulsi, mulsi, morordi,	be on fire increase incite be cold weep stick command shine mourn remain milk soothe bite	neo, niveo, pendeo, prandeo, video, sorbeo,	nevi, nivi, nixi, pependi, prandi, vidi, sorpai,	spin wink hang dine see sup
ago, cumbo, cedo, cado, cædo, coquo, como, cerno, cano, curro, capesso, cupio, dico, duco, demo, disco, emo, findo, fundo, fallo, frango, fluo, facesso, gigno, gero, lego, lino,	egi, cubui, cessi, cecidi, cecidi, coxi, compsi, crevi, cecini, cucurri, capessivi, cupivi, dixi, duxi, dempsi, didici, emi, fidi, fundo, fallo, fefelli, fregi, fluo, fluxi, facessi, genui, gessi, legi, lini, levi,	act lie down yield fall cut cook comb discern sing run take desire say lead take away learn buy cleave pour deceive break flow do produce bear read anoint	promo, premo, pluo, pono, posco, pinso, quæro, rumpo, rapio, scribo, scindo, sisto, sterto, struo, sumo, sterno, sperno, sero, strepo, sapio, tendo, tundo, tango, temno, tero, vivo, vello,	prompsi, pressi, pluvi, posui, poscui, pinui, quæsvi, rupi, rapui, scripsi, acidi, stiti, stertui, struxi, sumpsai, stravi, spreui, seti, strepui, sapui, tetendi, tutudi, tetigi, tempai, trivi, vixi, velli,	draw press rain put ask bruise seek break seize write cut place snore build take strew despise set in order sound savour stretch pound touch contemn wear live tear
mitto, meto, necto, parco, pendo, pecto, pungo,	missi, messui, nexui, peperci, parsi, pependi, pexui, pupugi,	send mow join spare hang comb prick	psallo, pello,	psalli, pepuli,	fasten sing drive
amicio, fulcio, sarcio, sancio, vincio,	amicui, fulsi, sarsi, sanxi, vinxi,	clothe prop mend sanction bind	haurio, salio, sepio, sentio, venio, veneo,	hausi, salui, sepsi, sensi, veni, veni,	draw leap hedge perceive come be sold

<i>Formation of the Supine.</i>	<i>Irregular Supines.</i>			
<p>Perfects ending in bi, mi, ni, pi, qui, ti, and vi, form their supine in <i>tum</i> ; as,</p> <p>bibo, bibi, bibitum, drink emo, emi, emptum, buy cano, cecini, cantum, sing capio, cepi, captum, take linquo, liqui, lictum, leave sto, steti, statum, stand fio, flavi, flatum, blow.</p>	<p>alo, amicio, caveo, consulo, colo, censeo, doceo, faveo, fugio, flecto, figo, fluo, fallo, fulcio, frico, gero, haurio, indulgeo,</p>	<p>alui, amicui, cavi, consului, colui, censui, docui, favi, fugi, flexi, fixi, fluxi, fefelli, fulsi, fricui, gessi, hausui, indulsui,</p>	<p>altum & alitum, amictum & amictum, cautum, consultum, cultum, censum, doctum, fautum, fugitum, flexum, fixum, fluxum, falsum, fultum, frictum, gestum, haustum, indultum & indultum,</p>	<p>nourish clothe beware consult till think teach favour fly bend fix flow deceive prop rub bear draw indulge wash</p>
<p>Perfects in ci, gi, xi, form their supine in <i>ctum</i> ; as,</p> <p>vinco, vici, victum, conquer lego, legi, lectum, read vincio, vinxi, vinctum, bind.</p>	<p>lavo, lino, mitto, misceo, meto, neco, necto, poto, plecto, pello, pario, pinso, pecto, parco,</p>	<p>lavi, lini, levi, livi, misi, miscui, meto, meausui, necui, nexui, potavi, plexi, pepuli, peperui, pinsui, pexui, peperci,</p>	<p>lotum, lautum, lavatum, litum, missum, mistum & mixtum, messum, nectum, nexum, potum & potatum, plexum, pulsam, partum, pistum, pexum,</p>	<p>anoint send mix mow kill join drink fold drive bring forth pound comb</p>
<p>Perfects in di, li, ri, and si, form their supine in <i>sum</i> ; as,</p> <p>video, vidi, visum, see sallo, salli, salsum, salt verro, verri, versum, sweep viso, visi, visum, visit.</p>	<p>rapio, ruo, sero, serui, serui, solvo, singultio, sepelio, seco, salio, sarcio, torqueo, torreo, teneo, texo, verto, volvo, veneo, vello, velli & vulsi, uro,</p>	<p>parui, rapui, rui, serui, seui, solvi, singultivi, sepelivi, secui, salui, sarsi, torsi, torui, tenui, texui, verti, volvi, veni, velli & vulsi, uasi,</p>	<p>parsum, raptum, ruitum, sertum, satum, solutum, singultum, sepultum, sectum, saltum, sartum, torsum & tortum, tostum, tentum, textum, versum, vultum, venum, vulsum, ustum,</p>	<p>spare seize rush set in order sow loose sob bury cut leap mend twist toast hold weave turn roll be sold pluck burn</p>
<p>Perfects in psi form their supine in <i>ptum</i> ; as,</p> <p>scribo, scripsi, scriptum, write.</p>				
<p>Perfects in ui form their supine in <i>itum</i> ; as,</p> <p>domo, domui, domitum, subdue. moneo, monui, monitum, advise.</p>	<p>finco, pingo, ringo, stringo,</p>	<p>finxi, pinxi, rinxi, strinxi,</p>	<p>fictum, pictum, rictum, strictum,</p>	<p>mould paint grin as a dog bind</p>
<p>But perfects in ui from uo, form their supine in <i>utum</i> ; as,</p> <p>exuo, exui, exutum, put off.</p>	<p>pando, sedeo, scindo, findo, fodio,</p>	<p>pandi, sedi, scidi, fidi, fodi,</p>	<p>passum, sessum, scissum, fissum, fossum,</p>	<p>lay open sit cut cleave dig</p>

Many Verbs have no perfect active, and therefore can have no supine; as, *ambigo, ambigere*, to doubt.

Many others having the perfect have no supine, particularly neuters of the second conjugation.

Verbs which want the supine must want also the perfect passive and other tenses derived from it.

Deponent Verbs, as has been observed before, are those which have a passive ending, as *glorior*, and an active meaning, as *I boast*; and their perfects are formed from the supine which is made from what would have been the active perfect, which supines they retain, together with the gerunds and active participles: thus,

Glorior, gloriaris or gloriare, gloriatus sum or fui, gloriarī, gloriatus, glorian-dus, gloriandi, do, dum, gloriatum, gloriatu, glorians, gloriaturus.

The following Deponent Perfects are irregular:

labor,	lapsus sum,	to glide	orior,	ortus sum,	to arise
pator,	passus sum,	suffer	morior,	mortuus sum,	die
fateor,	fassus sum,	confess	ordior,	orditus & orsus sum,	begin
adipiscor,	adeptus sum,	gain	nitor,	nisus & nixus sum,	strive
gradior,	gressus sum,	step	utor,	usus sum,	use
comminiscor,	commentus sum,	devise	loquor,	locutus sum,	speak
expergiscor,	experrectus sum,	awake	reor,	ratus sum,	suppose
nanciscor,	nactus sum,	meet with	tueor,	tuitus sum,	see
obliscor,	oblitus sum,	forget	misereor,	misertus sum,	pity
irascor,	iratus sum,	be angry	experior,	expertus sum,	try
paciscor,	pactus sum,	bargain	queror,	questus sum,	complain
profiscor,	profectus sum,	depart	fruor,	fructus & fruitus sum,	enjoy
ulciscor,	ultus sum,	take revenge	metior,	mensus sum,	survey.

Compound Verbs which double the first consonant of the present to form the perfect, drop that reduplication or additional syllable in composition; as,

Pello, pepuli, when compounded with *con*, makes *compello, compuli*, not *comp-epuli*.

Except *præcurro, præcurri, excurro, excurre, repungo, repupugi*, and compounds of *do, disco, sto, posco*; as, *condo condidi, edisco edidici, consto constitui, depono depoposci*.

Supines of reduplicating perfects drop the reduplication: thus *pependi* makes its supine *pensum*, not *pepensum*; *momordi* makes *morsum*, not *momorsum*.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

Possum, I am able; volo, I am willing; nolo, I am unwilling; malo, I had rather, or am more willing; edo, I eat; fero, I bear or suffer; feror, I am borne; fio, I am made; vary from the general rules. They are formed thus :

1. *Possum, potes, potui, posse, potens—to be able.*
2. *Volo, vis, volui, velle; volendi, volendo, volendum, volens—to be willing.*
3. *Nolo, nonvis, nolui, nolle; nolendi, nolendo, nolendum, nolens—to be unwilling.*
4. *Malo, mavis, malui, malle; malendi, malendo, malendum, malens—to have [rather, or to be more willing.*
5. *Edo, $\left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} \text{edis} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{es,} \end{smallmatrix} \right\} \text{edi,} \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} \text{edere} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{esse,} \end{smallmatrix} \right\} \text{edendi, do, dum; esum, esu, edens, esurus—to eat.}$*
6. *Fero, fers, tuli, ferre; ferendi, do, dum; latum, latu, ferens, laturus—to bear [or suffer.*
7. *Fio, fis, factus sum or fui, fieri, factus, faciendus—to be made.*

To these may be added the passive voice of *fero*,—

Feror, ferris or ferre, latus sum or fui, ferri, latus, ferendus—to be borne or [suffered.

Possum is compounded of *potis*, able, and *sum*, I am, which will appear throughout all its tenses and persons; as, *potes* for *potes es*, *possumus* for *potes sumus*, *poteram* for *potis eram*, *poterimus* for *potes erimus*, *possem* for *potis essem*, &c.

Nolo is derived from *ne* or *non*, not, and *volo*, I wish; whence *nonvis*, and *nollem* for *non vellem*.

Malo is derived from *magis*, more, and *volo*, I wish; whence *maris* for *magis vis*, and *mallem* for *magis vellem*, &c.

Fio borrows its perfect tense, and all tenses depending upon it, from the obsolete verb *facior*, which is now only used in composition, as *afficio*, *perfacior*. Properly *fio* is a substantive verb like *sum*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense—I am able, &c.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Poſsum,	potes,	potest,	poſſumus,	potestis,	poſſunt.
Volo,	vis,	vult,	volumus,	vultis,	volunt.
Nolo,	nonvis,	nonvult,	nolumus,	nonvultis,	nolunt.
Malo,	mavis,	maſt,	malumus,	maſtis,	malunt.
Edo,	{edis or	edit or	edimus,	{editis or	edunt.
	es,	est,		estis,	
Fero,	feras,	fert,	ferimus,	fertis,	ferunt.
Fio,	ſis,	ſit,	ſimus,	ſitis,	ſunt.
Feror,	{feris or	feritur,	ferimur,	ferimini,	feruntur.
	ferre,				

Imperfect Tense—I was able.

Sing. Pot-eram, eras, erat. | Plur. Pot-eramus, eratis, erant.

Volēbam, nolēbam, malēbam, edēbam, ferēbam, fiēbam, and ferēbar, -aris, are regularly declined.

Perfect—have been able.

Potui, iſti, it ; imus, iſtis, erunt or ere.
 Volui,
 Nolui,
 Malui,
 Edi,
 Tuli,
 Factus ſum or fui.
 Latus ſum or fui.

Pluperfect—had been able.

Potueram, ras, rat ; ramus, ratis, rant.
 Volueram,
 Nolueram,
 Malueram,
 Ederam,
 Tuleram,
 Factus eram or fueram.
 Latus eram or fueram.

Future—shall or will be able.

Potero, eris, erit ; erimus, eritis, erunt.
 Volam, es, et ; emus, etis, en
 Nolam,
 Malam,
 Edam,
 Feram,
 Fiam,
 Ferar, eris or ere, etur ; emur, emini, entur.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Obs.—Poſsum, volo, malo, have no Imperative.

Present Tense—be thou unwilling, &c.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
—	Noli,	nolito ;	—	nolite, nolitote.	—
—	{Ede, edito, or	edat, edito,	—	{edite, editote,	—
—	{es, esto ;	or esto,	—	{este, estote ;	—
—	Fer,	ferto ; ferat, fertor,	—	feramus ; ferte, fertote ;	fer-ant, unto.
—	Fi,	fito ; fiat, fito,	—	ſiamus ; ſite, ſitote ;	ſiant, ſiunto.
—	Ferre, fertor ;	feratur, fertor,	—	feramur ; ferimin-i, or ;	ferantur, untor.

POTENTIAL AND SUBJUNCTIVE MOODS.

Present—may be able.

Poss-im, is, it ; imus, itis, int.

Vel-im,

Nol-im,

Mal-im,

Ed-am, as, at ; amus, atis, ant.

Fer-am,

Fi-am,

Fer-ar, aris, are, atur, &c.

Imperfect—might be able.

Possem, es, et ; ĕmus, ĕtis, ent.

Vellem,

Nollem,

Mallem,

Ederem, }

Essem, }

Ferrem,

Fierem,

Ferrer, ĕris, ĕre, etur ; ĕmur, ĕmini, ĕntur.

Perfect—should have been able.

Pot-uerim, ris, rit ; rĭmus, rĭtis, rint.

Vol-uerim,

Nol-uerim,

Mal-uerim,

Ed-erim,

Tul-erim,

Factus sim or fuerim.

Latus sim or fuerim.

Pluperfect—might have been able.

Potu-issem, es, et ; ĕmus, ĕtis, ent.

Volu-issem,

Nolu-issem,

Malu-issem,

Ed-issem,

Tul-issem,

Factus essem or fuisset.

Latus essem or fuisset.

Future—shall have been able.

Potu-ero, eris, erit ; erĭmus, erĭtis, erint.

Volu-ero,

Nolu-ero,

Malu-ero,

Ed-ero,

Tul-ero,

Factus ero or fuero.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present & Imperfect, { Posse, velle, nolle, malle,
Edere or esse, ferre, fieri, ferri.Perfect & Pluperfect, { Potuisse, voluisse, noluisse, maluisse,
Edisse, tulisse, factum esse, latum esse.Future, { $\overline{\text{Esurum}}$ } $\overline{\text{laturum}}$ } $\overline{\text{factum}}$ } $\overline{\text{latum}}$
 { esse. } esse. } iri. } iri.

THE VERB *EO*, I go.

Eo, *is*, *ivi*, *ire* ; *eundi*, *eundo*, *eundum* ; *itum*, *itu*, *iens*, *iturus*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Eo</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	<i>it</i> ,	<i>imus</i> ,	<i>itis</i> ,	<i>eunt</i> .
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>Ibam</i> ,	<i>ibas</i> ,	<i>ibat</i> ,	<i>ibamus</i> ,	<i>ibatis</i> ,	<i>ibant</i> .
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Ivi</i> ,	<i>ivisti</i> ,	<i>ivit</i> ,	<i>ivimus</i> ,	<i>ivistis</i> ,	<i>iverunt</i> .
<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>Iveram</i> ,	<i>iveras</i> ,	<i>iverat</i> ,	<i>iveramus</i> ,	<i>iveratis</i> ,	<i>iverant</i> .
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>Ibo</i> ,	<i>ibis</i> ,	<i>ibit</i> ,	<i>ibimus</i> ,	<i>ibitis</i> ,	<i>ibunt</i> .

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. — *I*, *ito* ; *eat*, *ito* ; | *eamus* ; *ite*, *itote* ; *eant*, *eunto*.

POTENTIAL OR SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Eam</i> ,	<i>eas</i> ,	<i>eat</i> ,	<i>eamus</i> ,	<i>eatis</i> ,	<i>eant</i> .
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>Irem</i> ,	<i>ires</i> ,	<i>iret</i> ,	<i>iremus</i> ,	<i>iretis</i> ,	<i>irent</i> .
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Iverim</i> ,	<i>iveris</i> ,	<i>iverit</i> ,	<i>iverimus</i> ,	<i>iveritis</i> ,	<i>iverint</i> .
<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>Ivissem</i> ,	<i>ivisses</i> ,	<i>ivisset</i> ,	<i>ivissemus</i> ,	<i>ivissetis</i> ,	<i>ivissent</i> .
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>Ivero</i> ,	<i>iveris</i> ,	<i>iverit</i> ,	<i>iverimus</i> ,	<i>iveritis</i> ,	<i>iverint</i> .

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. & Imperf. *ire* ; *Perf. & Plup.* *ivisse* ; *Fut.* *iturum esse*.
Present Particip. *iens* ; *Gen.* *euntis* ; *Dat.* *eunti*.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Impersonal Verbs are those which are expressed in general terms, and in English have the word *it* before them. They have only the third person singular, and therefore are called *impersonal* ; as,

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>
<i>delectat</i> , it delighteth,	<i>delectabat</i> , it did delight,	<i>delectavit</i> , it hath delighted, &c.
<i>deceat</i> , it becometh,	<i>decebat</i> , it did become,	<i>deceuit</i> , it hath become, &c.
<i>pugnatur</i> , it is fought,	<i>pugnabatur</i> , it was being fought,	<i>pugnatum est</i> , it hath been fought, &c.

DEFECTIVE VERBS

are those which have only some particular tenses and persons ; as,

Aio, <i>I say.</i>						
Indic. Pres.	Aio,	ais,	ait ;	—	—	aiunt.
Imperfect,	Aiebam,	bas,	bat ;	bamus,	batis,	bant.
Perfect,	—	aisti,	—	—	aistis,	—
Imperative,	—	ai,	—	—	—	—
Pres. Potent.	—	aias,	aiat ;	aiamus,	—	aiant.
Particip. Pres.	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	aiens.

Ausim, <i>I dare.</i>						
Indic. or Poten.	Ausim,	ausis,	ausit ;	—	—	ausint.

Ave, <i>hail.</i>						
Imperative	—	{ Ave,	—	—	{ avéte,	—
Mood,		{ Avéto,	—	—	{ avetôte,	—
Infinitive,	. . .	. . .	avére.			

Salve, <i>God save you !</i>						
Indic. Future,	—	Salvébis,	—	—	—	—
Imperative,	—	{ Salve,	—	—	{ salvéte,	—
Infinitive,	. . .	{ Salvéto,	—	—	{ salvétote,	—
		. . .	salvére.			

Cedo, <i>give me.</i>						
Imperative,	—	Cedo,	—	—	cedite,	—

Faxo or faxim, <i>for faciam.</i>						
Indic. Fut., or	{ Faxo, or	is,	it ;	imus,	itis,	int.
Potent. Pres.		faxim,	—	—	—	—

Quæso, <i>I pray.</i>						
Indic. Pres.	Quæso,	is,	it ;	quæsumus,	—	—
Infinitive,	Quæsere.	—	—	Part. Quæssens.	—	—

Inquo or Inquam, <i>I say.</i>						
Indic. Pres.	{ Inquo,	is,	it ;	inquimus,	—	inquiunt.
Imperfect,	{ Inquam,	—	inquirebat ;	—	—	inquirebant.
Perfect,	—	inquiisti,	—	—	—	—
Future,	—	inquies, et ;	—	—	—	—
Imperative,	—	inque, { inquit,	Part. Inquiens.	—	—	—
		{ inquito.				

Memini, <i>I remember.</i>						
Imperative,	—	memento,	—	—	mementote,	—

Cœpi, <i>I begin.</i>						
Perfect,	Cœpi,	cœpisti,	—	—	—	—

Odi, <i>I hate.</i>						
Perfect,	Odi,	isti,	it ;	—	—	odērunt.

Novi, *I know.*

The four last Verbs are declinable only in the Tenses derived from them, viz. -eram, -erim, -issem, ero, isse :—*cœpi* and *odi* also form those tenses. The perfects have a present sense, and the pluperfects the sense of the perfects.

PREPOSITIONS.

A Preposition is a part of speech most commonly set before another word, as *ad dextram*, to the right hand ; or else joined in composition, as *in-doctus*, unlearned.

<i>These Prepositions govern an ACCUSATIVE CASE.</i>				<i>These govern an ABLATIVE CASE.</i>	
Ad,	to or at	Juxta,	near	A, ab, abs, from or by	
Adversum,	} against	Ob,	for or because of.	Absque, without	
Adversus,		* Penès,	in the power of.	Coram, { before, or in the presence of	
Ante,	before	Ponè,	behind.	Cum, with	
Apud,	at or near	Post,	after or since.	De, of or from	
Circa,	} about	Præter,	except or besides.	E, ex, of, from, or out of	
Circum,		Propè,	nigh.	Palam, openly	
Circiter,		Propter,	for or because of.	Præ, { before, or in comparison of	
Cis, citra,	on this side	Secundum,	according to.	Pro, for	
Contra,	against	Secus,	by or along.	Sine, without	
Erga,	towards	Supra,	above.	* Tenus, { up to, or as far as.	
Extra,	without	Trans,	on the farther side.		
Intra,	within	* Versus,	towards.		
Infra,	beneath	Ultra,	beyond.		
Inter,	between or among	* Usque,	until.		

These Prepositions govern both cases.

Clam, unknown to, as,	clam patrem, unknown to my father.	clam patre, unknown to my father.
In, for into or towards, requires an accusative, as, }	eo in urbem, I go into the city.	
In, for in only, requires an ablative, as, }	. . . . . }	in te spes est, my hope is in thee.
Sub, near or under, an acc. or abl., as, }	sub noctem, a little before night.	sub judice, before the judge.
Subter, under, acc. & abl., as }	subter terram, under the earth.	subter aquâ, under the water.
Super, upon, acc. & abl., as, }	super lapidem, upon a stone.	super viridi fronde, upon a green bough.

* *Versus* and *tenus* are always set after the word which they govern; and *penès* and *usque* are generally so placed; as,

Londinum versus, towards London.

Portâ tenus, up to the gate.

When the noun following is plural, *tenus* generally requires it to be in the genitive; as, aurium tenus, up to the ears.

A SHORT SYNTAX

PREPARATORY TO RENDERING AN EASY SENTENCE INTO
ENGLISH OR LATIN.ON THE FIRST CONCORD OR AGREEMENT,
BETWEEN THE NOMINATIVE CASE AND THE VERB.

The verb expresses either a state of existence, or else an action done *by* or done *to* some person or thing ; as, He *is warm*—They *eat*—She *was hurt*—The chair *was broken*—The city *will be taken*.

Every complete sentence speaks of some action performed, or of a state of being, and therefore must have a verb in it. Thus in the sentence, "The master teaches," the word *teaches* expresses the action done, or verb ; and "master," being the person who does the action, is called the nominative case to the verb "*teaches*." Again, in the sentence, "The boy is praised," the words "*is praised*" express the action done, and "boy," being the person to whom it is done, is the nominative case to the verb "*is praised*."

RULE 1.—The verb must agree with its nominative case in number and person ; as,

The master teaches—Præceptor docet.
The robbers kill—Latrones occidunt.
Ye have done it—Vos fecistis.
Thou fliest—Tu fugis.
We depart—Nos discedimus.

Of what number and person is *docet* ?—to agree with what ? Answer the same of *occidunt* ? *fecistis* ? *fugis* ? *discedimus* ?

ON THE SECOND CONCORD OR AGREEMENT,
BETWEEN THE SUBSTANTIVE AND ADJECTIVE.

RULE 2.—Adjectives, participles, and pronouns, must agree with their substantives in gender, number, and in case ; as,

An uncommon bird—Rara avis.
To a great lord—Magno domino.
From a beautiful city—Ab urbe pulchrâ.
Of black clouds—Nigrarum nubium.

Of what gender, number, and case is *rara* ?—and why ? Answer the same of *magno*—*pulchrâ*—*nigrarum*.

ON THE THIRD CONCORD OR AGREEMENT,
BETWEEN THE ANTECEDENT AND THE RELATIVE.

The pronoun *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, *who* or *which*, is called the relative pronoun, because it relates to some person or thing mentioned before, which is therefore called the antecedent ; as, The man *who* speaks, signifies, The man, *which* man speaks.

RULE 3.—The relative pronoun must agree with the antecedent, or foregoing substantive to which it relates, in gender and in number ; as,

The mother who loves—Mater, quæ amat.
The kingdom which flourished—Regnum, quod florebat.
The books which have been written—Libri qui scripti sunt.

Why is *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, called the relative pronoun ? What is the antecedent ?

Of what number and gender is *quæ* ? and why ?

quod ? —
qui ? —

RULE 4.—Verbs transitive, that is, whose action passes on to the following noun, generally require that noun to be in the accusative case ; as,

They seek the general—*Quærunť imperatorem.*

What is a transitive verb ? What case do verbs transitive require ?
Of what case is *imperatorem* ? and why ?

RULE 5.—When two substantives of different significations meet together with the word *of* or *s* apostrophe between them, the latter is put in the genitive case ; as,

The love of money—*Amor nummi.*

Cæsar's soldiers, *i. e.* the soldiers of Cæsar—*Milites Cæsaris.*

Your father's prayers, *i. e.* the prayers of your father—*Preces tui patris.*

Of what case is *nummi* ? and why ?

Cæsaris ? —
patris ? —

RULE 6.—When the two substantives relate to the same person or thing, the latter is put in the same case as the former ; as,

The consul Cicero—*Consul Cicero.*

The father of the consul Cicero—*Pater consulis Ciceronis.*

I fear the consul Cicero—*Timeo consulem Ciceronem.*

Under the consul Cicero—*Sub consule Cicerone.*

Of what case is *Cicero* ? and why ?

Ciceronis ? —
Ciceronem ? —
Cicerone ? —

RULE 7.—The instrument, cause, or manner of an action is put in the ablative case ; as,

They defend with darts—*Defendunt jaculis.*

He performed the business with surprising quickness—*Mirâ celeritate rem peregit.*

Of what case is *jaculis* ? and why ? Of what case is *celeritate* ? and why ?

RULE 8.—When two verbs meet together, the latter is generally put in the infinitive ; as,

The horse is used to run—*Equus solet currere.*

The boy desires to learn—*Puer cupit discere.*

Of what mood is *currere* ? and why ? Of what mood is *discere* ? and why ?

RULE 9.—The verb *sum*, I am, and others of like signification, as *videor*, I seem, *vocor*, I am called, have the same case after as before them ; as,

Anger is a short madness—*Ira est furor brevis.*

Faith is esteemed the foundation—*Fides habetur fundamentum.*

Of what case is *furor* ? and why ? What case is *fundamentum* ? and why ?

RULE 10.—If the nominative case come between the relative *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, and the verb, the relative is governed, as to its case, by the verb, or by some other word which is placed with it in the same part of the sentence ; as,

The works which he performed—*Opera, quæ ille perfecit.*

The books, which thou hast read—*Libri, quos tu legisti.*

The parents, whom they love—*Parentes, quos illi amant.*

The man, whose son died—*Vir, cujus filius mortuus est.*

The glory, which Cæsar obtained—*Gloria, quâ Cæsar potitus est.*

The darts, with which he defended himself—*Jacula, quibus se defendit.*

What case is *quæ*? By what is it governed? and why? (*See Rule 4.*)
quos? By what governed? and why?
cujus? By what governed? and why? (*See Rule 5.*)
quâ? By what governed? (*See Rule for Potior.*)
quibus? By what governed? (*See Rule 7.*)

What antecedent is understood with each?

RULE 11.—The English conjunction *THAT*, answering to *quod* or *ut*, is often rendered by putting the following noun or pronoun in the accusative case, and the verb following in the infinitive mood, the conjunction *THAT* being left out altogether. Thus, instead of saying,

He declared *that he would return*; we may say,
 He declared *himself to be about to return*.
 Dixit se reditum esse.

He supposed *that Cæsar had crossed the river*;
 He supposed *Cæsar to have crossed the river*.

They acknowledged *that they were guilty*;
 They acknowledged *themselves to be guilty*.

I think *that your father is an excellent man*;
 I think *your father to be an excellent man*.

THE EXAMPLES OF THE ETON SYNTAX TO BE CONSTRUED, AND THE GOVERNED WORD EXPLAINED.

The Three Concorde.

Via est.
Vos damnâstis.
Te rediisse gaudeo.
Iræ amantium est integratio amoris.
Pectus robora fiunt.
Pars abiere.
Uterque luduntur.
Rara avis.
Audito regem Doroberniam proficisci.
Quod mora tardat.
Cujus numen adoro.

Construction of Substantives & Adjectives.

Amor nummi crescit.
Urbi pater est.
Ingenui cultus puer.
Vir nullâ fide.
Vitanda est Siren Desidia.
Marce fili.
Auctoritate opus est.
Usus est pecuniâ.
Trojanus origine.
Nomine grammaticus.
Pallidus irâ.
Novitatis avida.
Mens præscia futuri.
Esto memor brevis ævi.
Immemor beneficii.
Rudis belli.
Impavidus sui.
Timidus decorum.
Nulli astro penetrabilis.

Civis formidatus Othoni.
Vultum demissus.
Fortior est pater filius.
Ære perennius.
Commune animantium omnium.
Aspicias urbem immunem belli.
Mors omnibus communis.
Immunes ab illis malis sumus.
Dives equorum.
Melle fecundissimus.
Dignus es odio.
Magnorum indignus avorum.
Patriæ idoneus.
Par hujus erat.
Regio contermina Gallie.

Construction of Verbs.

Alterum accusat probri.
De eâ re admonendus est.
Accuso utroque.
Pecus est Melibœi.
Exitio est mare nautis.
Percontatorem fugito.
Tu posce deos veniam.
Is rerum suarum satagit.
Data fidei reminiscitur.
Hæc olim meminisse juvabit.
Est mihi pater.
Tibi omnia suppetunt.
Duram servit servitutem.
Hi jaculis defendunt.
Amore abundas, Antipho.
Implentur veteris Bacchi.

Romani potiti sunt signorum.
Troes potiuntur arenâ.
Quis te mihi casus ademittit ?
Fortuna multis dat nimis.
Quæ tibi promitto.
Vacuis committere cenis.
Non potes mihi commodare.
Fessum quies juvat.
Glacies frigida lædit molle pecus.
Me duce tutus eris.
Teruncio non emerim.
Me pili aestimat.
Obtemperat pius filius patri.
Utrique mortem est minitatus.
Parvis componere magna solebam.
Imperat aut servit collecta pecunia
cuique.
Luna regit menses.
Orbem Deus gubernat.
Temperat ipse sibi.
Sol temperat omnia luce.
Hic moderatur equos.
Qui non moderabitur iræ.
Justitia fungatur officiis.
Alienâ insaniam frui.
Dii tibi benefaciant.
Tignis nidum suspendit hirundo.
Ægrotat animo magis quam corpore.
Candet dentes.
Angis te animi.
De me nunquam benè meritis est.

Impersonal Verbs.

Interest magistratûs tueri bonos.
Tanti refert teipsum noscere.
Miseret me tui.
Senectutis eum non pœnitebit.
A Deo nobis beneficit.
Pugnatum est (a nobis), for pugnâvimus.
Me juvat ire per altum.
Spectat ad omnes benè vivere.

Names of Places.

Quid Romæ faciam ?
Thebis nutritus an Argis.
Concessi Cantabrigiam.
Ite domum, capellæ.
Româ profectus est.

Time and Distance.

Area lata pedum denum.
Turris centum pedes alta.
Fons latus pedibus tribus.
Centum annos regnabitur.
Nemo omnibus horis sapit.

Participles, Gerunds, & Supines.

Duplices tendens palmas.
Efferor studio patres vestros videndi

Utendum est ceteris.
Sate sanguine divum.
Amor habendi.
Alitur vitium vivitque tegendo.
Ad accusandos homines duci præmio.
Spectatum veniunt.
Factu fœdum est.

Verbs Substantive, &c.

Deus est summum bonum.
Natura beatis omnibus esse dedit.

Verbs Passive.

Laudatur ab his.
Accusaris a me furti.
Privaberis magistratu.
A præceptore vapulabis.

Infinitive Mood.

Dicere puduit—scribere jussit amor.

Adverbs.

Ubi gentium ?
Eò impudente.
Quò terrarum ?
Tunc temporis.
Satis eloquentis.
Instar montis.
Sibi inutiliter vivit.
Optimè omnium.

Conjunctions.

Socrates docuit Xenophontem et Platonem.
Nec scribit nec legit.
Emi librum centussi et pluris.
Vixi Romæ et Venetiis.

Conjunctions, &c. governing the Subjunctive.

Nihil refert feceris an perussaris.
Vise num redierit.
Dum prosim tibi.
Stultus es, qui huic credas.

Prepositions.

Habeo te loco parentis.
Detrudunt naves scopulo.
Accipit in Teucros mentem benignam.
In comoda publica peccem.
Super Priamo multa rogitans.
Super Garamantas et Indos.
Summo tenus attingit ore.
Crurum tenuis.

Interjections.

O festus dies hominis !
O fortunatos agricolas !
Hei mihi ! Væ misero mihi !

L A T I N G R A M M A R.

PART II.

S Y N T A X.

SYNTAX.

(The principal Rules are given in Latin afterwards, to be construed and committed to memory.)

THE FIRST CONCORD.

BETWEEN THE NOMINATIVE CASE AND THE VERB.

A verb personal agrees with its nominative case in number and person : as,
Sera nunquam est ad bonos mores via.

The way to good manners is never too late.—(Note 1, at end of Syntax.)

The nominative case of pronouns is seldom expressed : as,

Exilium esse putat—for *ille* putat.

He thinks [it] to be banishment.—(Note 2.)

Unless for the sake of distinction or emphasis : as,

Vos damnastis.—You have condemned me ;

i. e. None other than you have condemned me.

Tu patronus es, tu parens.—Thou art [my] patron and parent.

Sometimes the sentence is the nominative case to the verb : as,

Ingenuas didicisse fideliter artes

Emollit mores.

To have learned the liberal sciences thoroughly, softens the manners.—
(Note 3.)

Sometimes an adverb followed by a genitive is the nominative case : as,

Partim virorum ceciderunt in bello.

Part of the men fell in the war.

EXCEPTIONS.

When in English the nominative case is preceded by the conjunction THAT, the sense may often be expressed in Latin without *quod* or *ut*, by using the accusative instead of the nominative, and putting the verb in the infinitive mood : as,

Gaudeo te rediisse incolumem.—(See Rule 11, page 45.)

I rejoice that you are returned safe.

Scis me sentire istud idem.

You know that I think that same (thing).—(Note 4.)

A verb placed between two nominative cases of different numbers may agree with either of them : as,

Amantium iræ amoris integratio est.

The quarrels of lovers are the renewal of love.

Pectus quoque robora fiunt.

The breast also becomes oak.

A noun of multitude, that is, which implies more than one person or thing, although it is itself of the singular number, may have a plural verb: as,

Pars abiire.—Part, or some of them, are gone away.

Uterque luduntur dolis.—Both are deceived with tricks.

THE SECOND CONCORD.

BETWEEN THE SUBSTANTIVE AND THE ADJECTIVE.

Adjectives, participles, and pronouns, agree with their substantives in gender, in number, and in case: as,

Rara avis in terris.—An uncommon bird in the world. *Juv.*—(*Notes* 5, 6, 7, 8.)

Sometimes the sentence supplies the place of the substantive, and the adjective is put in the neuter gender; as,

Audito regem Doroberniam proficisci.

[It being] heard that the king was gone to Dover.

THE THIRD CONCORD.

BETWEEN THE RELATIVE AND THE ANTECEDENT.—(*Note* 9.)

The relative pronoun *QUI* agrees with its antecedent [*i. e.* the foregoing substantive or pronoun, to which it belongs and refers] in gender, in number, and in person: as,

Vir bonus est, qui leges juraque servat.—*HOR.*

He is the good man who observes the laws and ordinances.

Regnum, quod florebat.—The kingdom which flourished.

Sometimes a sentence is the antecedent to the relative, which is then put in the neuter gender: as,

In tempore veni, quod rerum omnium est primum.—*TER.*

I came in time, which is the chief of all things.

A relative placed between two substantives of different genders and numbers agrees sometimes with the latter: as,

Homines tuentur illum globum, quæ terra dicitur.—*CIC.*

Men regard that globe, which is called the earth.—(*Notes* 10, 11.)

If the nominative case come between the relative and the verb, the relative is governed, as to its case, by the verb, or by some other word which is placed with it in the same part of the sentence: as,

Gratia ab officio, quod mora tardat, abest.—*OVID.*

Thanks are lost in a kindness which delay keeps back.

Cujus numen ego adoro.—*Whose deity I adore.*

Est natio nulla, quam nos pertimescamus.—*CIC.*

There is no nation, which we can dread.—(*Note* 12.)

CONSTRUCTION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

GENITIVE.

When two substantives of different significations meet together, the latter is put in the genitive case : as,

Crescit amor nummi.—The love of money increases. Juv.—(Note 13.)

Sometimes the genitive stands alone, the former substantive being understood by the figure ellipsis : as,

Ubi ad Dianæ veneris, ito ad dextram.

When you are come to Diana's, turn to the right.

Here the word *templum* is left out before Diana.

** The PRAISE, DISPRAISE, or QUALITY of any person or thing is put in the ablative, or in the genitive : as,

Ingenui vultûs puer.—A boy of an ingenuous countenance.—Juv.

(Note 14.)

DATIVE.

The genitive of the latter of the two substantives is sometimes changed into a dative : as,

Urbi pater est.—He is the father of the city.

When the latter of two substantives refers to the same person or thing as the former, it is put in the same case with it by APPPOSITION : as,

Vitanda est improba siren Desidia.

The wicked siren Sloth is to be shunned.

Misimus consulem, virum fortissimum, cum exercitu.—Cic.

We have sent a consul, a very brave man, with an army.

Marce fili.—O (my) son Marcus.—(Note 16.)

ABLATIVE.

** The PRAISE, DISPRAISE, or QUALITY of any person or thing is put in the ablative, or in the genitive : as,

Vir nullâ fide.—A man of no integrity.—(Note 14.)

OPUS and USUS, signifying NEED, require an ablative of the thing needed : as,

Auctoritate tuâ nobis opus est.

There is need to us of your authority.

Usus est pecuniâ.—There is need of money.—(Note 15.)

Substantives and adjectives govern an ablative case, signifying the CAUSE, REASON, or MANNER of their existence : as,

Trojanus origine Cæsar.—Cæsar a Trojan by descent.

Nomine grammaticus.—A grammarian in name.

Pallidus irâ.—Pale with anger.

CONSTRUCTION OF ADJECTIVES.

An adjective in the neuter gender, without a substantive, sometimes requires a genitive case : as,

Paululum pecuniæ.—A very little money.—(Note 17.)

Adjectives which signify DESIRE, KNOWLEDGE, MEMORY, FEAR, or other passions of the mind, and their opposites, govern a genitive case : as,

GENITIVE.

Est natura hominum novitatis avida.—PLIN.

The nature of men is fond of novelty.

Mens præscia futuri.—A mind foreknowing the future.

Esto memor brevis ævi.—Be mindful of short life.

Immemor beneficii.—Forgetful of a kindness.

Rudis belli.—Ignorant of war.

Impavidus sui.—Fearless of himself.

Timidus deorum.—Fearful of the gods.

Adjectives derived from verbs, and ending in *ax*, require a genitive : as,

Audax ingenii.—Bold by nature.

Adjectives ending in *bilis*, taken passively, and derived from verbs, and participles of the passive voice, require a dative case : as,

DATIVE.

Nulli penetrabilis astro lucus iners.—STAT.

A thick grove penetrable to no star.

O mihi post nullos, Juli, memorande sodales.—MART.

O Julius, to be mentioned by me after none of my acquaintance.

Civis formidatus Othoni.—A citizen dreaded by Otho.

Mihi exorandus.—To be besought by me.

Adjectives and participles are often followed by an accusative case, signifying the manner, the preposition *secundum*, according to, being understood : as,

ACCUSATIVE.

Os humerosque deo similis.

Like a god [*secundum*, as to] his countenance and shoulders.

Vultum demissus.—Cast down as to his look.

Adjectives of the COMPARATIVE degree, when followed in English by the word THAN, if *quàm* be left out in Latin, govern an ablative : as,

ABLATIVE.

Fortior est patre filius.—The son is stronger than the father.

Virtus est opibus melior.—Virtue is better than wealth.

Exegi monumentum ære perennius.—HOR.

I have finished a monument more lasting than brass.—(Note 18.)

N. B. If *quàm* be expressed in Latin, the noun following will be generally in the same case with the preceding noun, with which it is compared : as,

Similior patri quàm matri.—More like father than mother.

Saltus majore jumentorum quàm hominum perniciæ superatus.—LIV.

The defile was passed with a greater destruction of beasts than of men.

Nulli flebilior quàm tibi, Virgili !

By no one more to be lamented than by thee, O Virgil !—(Notes 19, 20.)

GENITIVE.

* * COMMUNIS, common ; ALIENUS, strange ; and IMMUNIS, free, are joined to a genitive, a dative, or to an ablative with a preposition ; as,

Commune animantium omnium.—Common to all living creatures.
 Non aliena consilii.—Not unfit for the design.
 Aspicis urbem immunem belli.—You behold a city free from war.

** Adjectives which denote PLENTY or WANT, require sometimes an ablative, sometimes a genitive : as,

Dives equum (for equorum).—Rich in horses.
 Consilii expers.—Destitute of wisdom.

DATIVE.

* * COMMUNIS, ALIENUS, and IMMUNIS, govern a genitive, a dative, or an ablative with a preposition : as,

Mors omnibus est communis.—Death is common to all.
 Alienus ambitioni.—Averse to ambition.
 Caprificus omnibus est immunis.—The wild fig-tree is free to all.

The numeral SECUNDUS, when it signifies *inferior*, governs a dative : as,

Haud ulli veterum virtute secundus.—VIRG.
 Not inferior to any of the ancients in valour.

ACCUSATIVE.

ABLATIVE.

* * COMMUNIS, ALIENUS, and IMMUNIS, govern an ablative with a preposition : as,

Hoc mihi tecum commune est.—This is common to me and you.
 Non alienus à Scævola studiis.—Not averse from the studies of Scævola.
 Immunes ab illis malis sumus.—We are free from those evils.

** Adjectives which denote PLENTY or WANT, require sometimes an ablative, sometimes a genitive : as,

Amor et melle et felle est fecundissimus.—PLAUT.
 Love is very full both of honey and gall.
 Gratiâ beatus.—Abounding in favour.

(Exceptions from Rule in Ablative. Say that Rule first.)

Some of the undermentioned adjectives, "dignus, indignus," &c. admit sometimes a genitive: *as*,

GENITIVE.

Magnorum indignus avorum.—Unworthy of great ancestors.—*VIRG.*
Carmina digna deæ.—Verses worthy of a goddess.
Extorris regni.—Banished the kingdom.—*STAT.*

(Exceptions from Rule in Dative. Say that Rule first.)

Adjectives denoting "likeness" govern also a genitive: *as*,

Quem metuis par hujus erat.—Whom you fear was like this man.—*LUC.*
Domini similis es.—You are like your master.—*TER.*



Adjectives which signify ADVANTAGE, DISADVANTAGE, LIKENESS, UNLIKENESS, PLEASURE, SUBMISSION, OR RELATION, govern a dative: *as*,

DATIVE.

Patriæ idoneus; utilis agris.—Serviceable to his country; useful to the lands.
Similis patri.—Like his father.
Jucundus amicis.—Agreeable to his friends.
Supplex omnibus.—Submissive to all.
Est finitimus oratori poeta.—A poet is nearly allied to an orator.—(Note 21.)

To this rule belong nouns compounded of the preposition *con*: *as*, *con-tubernalis*, a comrade; *commilito*, a fellow-soldier: *as*,

Regio contermina Galliæ.—A country bordering on Gaul.

ACCUSATIVE.

NATUS, *COMMODUS*, *INCOMMODUS*, *UTILIS*, *INUTILIS*, *VEHEMENS*, *APTUS*, and some others, implying a fitness or tendency to any thing, sometimes take an accusative of the thing, with a preposition: *as*,

Natus ad gloriam.—Born for glory.
Utilis ad eam rem.—Profitable for that business.

ABLATIVE.



DIGNUS, worthy; *INDIGNUS*, unworthy; *PRÆDITUS*, endued; *CAPTUS*, disabled; *CONTENTUS*, content; *EXTORRIS*, banished; *FRETUS*, relying upon; *LIBER*, free, together with adjectives denoting *price* or *value*, generally require an ablative: *as*,

Dignus es odio.—Thou art worthy of hatred.—*TER.*
Tali ingenio præditum.—Endued with such a disposition.
Oculis capti talpæ.—The moles deprived of sight.—*VIRG.*
Sorte tuâ contentus abi.—Go, content with your lot.
Terrore liber animus.—A mind free from terror.
Gemmis venale nec auro.—To be bought with gems nor gold.

(For Nouns Partitive, &c. see note 22.)

CONSTRUCTION OF VERBS.

GENITIVE.	<p>Verbs of ACCUSING, of CONDEMNING, of WARNING, of ACQUITTING, and the like, with an accusative of the person, require also a genitive of the subject of accusation, admonition, &c. : as,</p> <p>Qui alterum accusat probri, eum ipsum se intueri oportet.—PLAUT. It behoves him, who accuses another of dishonesty, to look into himself.</p> <p>Sceleris condemnat generum suum.—He condemns his son of wickedness.—CIC. Admoneto eum pristinae fortunae.—Remind him of his former fortune.</p> <p>Furti absolutus est.—He was acquitted of the theft.—(Note 23.) (Say next the Exceptions in the Ablative.)</p> <p>The verb SUM requires a genitive case, as often as it signifies possession, property, duty, the sign of, or the relation to, any thing : as,</p> <p>Pecus est Melibœi.—The cattle is Melibœus's. Adolescentis est majores natu revereri.—CIC. It is the duty of a young man to reverence his elders.—(Note 25.)</p>
DATIVE.	<p>SUM, with many other verbs, admits two datives : as,</p> <p>Exitio est avidis mare nautis.—HOR. The sea is the destruction of greedy sailors.</p> <p>Quod mihi vitio vertis.—Which you impute as a fault to me.</p> <p>SUM, with its compounds, except possum, requires a dative : as,</p> <p>Rex pius est reipublicae ornamentum. A pious king is an ornament to the state.</p> <p>Mihi nec obest nec prodest.—It neither hurts, nor profits me.</p>
ACCUSATIVE.	<p>Verbs TRANSITIVE of any kind, whether active, deponent, or common, require an accusative : as,</p> <p>Percontatorem fugito.—Avoid an inquisitive man. Aper depopulatur agros.—The wild boar lays waste the fields.</p> <p>Verbs of ASKING, TEACHING, CLOTHING, CONCEALING, generally govern two accusatives, one of the person, the other of the thing : as,</p> <p>Tu modo posce deos veniam.—Ask thou only pardon of the gods.—VIRG. Ea ne me celet.—Lest he conceal these things from me.—TER. Dedoceo te istos mores.—I will unteach you those manners.—(Note 26.)</p>
ABLATIVE.	<p>(Exception from Rule in Genitive.)</p> <p>The genitive of the subject of ACCUSATION, ADMONITION, &c. is sometimes changed into an ablative, either with or without a preposition : as,</p> <p>Putavi eâ de re te esse admonendum.—CIC. I thought that you should be reminded of that matter.</p> <p>Condemnabo te eodem crimine.—I will condemn you of the same crime.</p> <p>(Exception from Rule in Genitive.)</p> <p>Uterque, both ; nullus, none ; alter, another ; neuter, neither ; alius, another ; ambo, both, and adjectives of the superlative degree, are joined to verbs of the above kind only in the ablative : as,</p> <p>Accuso eum utroque vel de utroque.—I accuse him of both. De plurimis simul accusaris.—You are accused of several things at once. (Note 24.)</p>

GENITIVE.	<p>SATAGO, to be busy about any thing; MISERERE and MISERESCO, to pity; require a genitive: as,</p> <p>Is rerum suarum satagit.—He is busy about his own business.—TER. Oro miserere laborum tantorum.—I pray you pity so great sufferings.—VIRG. Generis miseresce tui.—Pity your own family. STAT.—(Note 27.)</p> <p>** REMINISCOR, to remember; OBLIVISCOR, to forget; MEMINI, to remember; RECORDOR, to call to mind, admit a genitive or an accusative: as,</p> <p>Datæ fidei reminiscitur.—He remembers his promise. Hujus meriti recordor.—I remember this favour.—(Note 28.)</p>
DATIVE.	<hr/> <p>EST, used for "habeo, to have," governs a dative: as,</p> <p>Est mihi namque domi pater, est injusta noverca. There is to me a father, or I have a father at home, I have a severe step-mother.</p> <p>SUPPETIT and SUPPETUNT, to be sufficient, govern a dative, and are construed in like manner: as,</p> <p>Obsessis (hominibus) frumentum suppetit. Corn is to the besieged, or the besieged have corn. Tibi omnia suppetunt.—All things are to you, or you have all things.</p>
ACCUSATIVE.	<hr/> <p>** REMINISCOR, OBLIVISCOR, MEMINI, RECORDOR, admit a genitive or an accusative: as,</p> <p>Hæc olim meminisse juvabit.—VIRG. It will be pleasant to remember these (things) hereafter. Si ritè audita recordor.—If I rightly remember (the things) heard.</p> <p>Verbs neuter have an accusative of the nouns related to them: as,</p> <p>Duram servit servitutem.—He serves a hard servitude.—(Note 30.)</p>
ABLATIVE.	<hr/> <p>Every verb admits after it an ablative case, signifying the INSTRUMENT, CAUSE, OR MANNER of the action: as,</p> <p>Hi jaculis, illi certant defendere saxis.—VIRG. These strive to defend with darts, those with stones. Vehementer irâ excanduit.—He turned very pale with rage.—(Note 29.)</p> <p>Verbs of ABOUNDING, FILLING, and LOADING, and their OPPOSITES, govern an ablative: as,</p> <p>Amore abundas, Antipho.—You abound with your love, Antipho.—TER. Sylla omnes suos divitiis explevit.—SALL. Sylla glutted all his soldiers with riches. Te hoc crimine expedi.—Clear yourself of this charge.—TER.</p>

(Exception from foregoing Rule in Ablative.)

But some of the before-mentioned verbs of abounding, filling, loading,
&c. govern a genitive; as,

GENITIVE.

Implentur veteris Bacchi pinguisque ferinae.—VIRG.
They are filled with old wine and fat venison.
Quasi tu hujus indigeas patris.—TER.
As if you had need of his father.

- * * POTIOR, to gain or enjoy, governs a genitive or ablative: as,
Romani signorum et armorum potiti sunt.—SALL.
The Romans gained the standards and the arms.

All verbs govern a dative, of that person or thing which receives GAIN
or BENEFIT, or suffers LOSS or INJURY: as,
Quis te mihi casus ademit!—What accident has taken thee from me!—OVID.

To this rule belong verbs of various kinds.

DATIVE.

Verbs of GIVING and RESTORING govern a dative: as,
Fortuna multis dat nimis, satis nulli.—MART.
Fortune gives too much to many, enough to no one.—(Notes 31, 32.)

Verbs of PROMISING and PAYING govern a dative: as,
Quæ tibi promitto.—Which I promise you.
Æs alienum mihi numeravit.—He paid me the debt.

Verbs of TRUSTING govern a dative: as,
Vacuis committere venis.—To commit to the empty veins.

Verbs of ADVANTAGE and DISADVANTAGE generally govern a dative: as,
Non potes mihi commodare nec incommodare.
You are not able to serve or disserve me.

ACCUSATIVE.

Except *juvo*, to help; *lædo*, to hurt; *delecto*, to delight; *offendo*, to offend,
and some others, which govern an accusative; as,
Fessum quies juvat.—Rest refreshes the weary.
Glacies frigida lædit molle pecus.—The cold frost hurts the tender flock.

ABLATIVE.

- * * POTIOR, to gain or enjoy, governs a genitive or ablative: as,
Egressi optatâ potiuntur Troes arenâ.—VIRG.
The Trojans having landed, enjoy the wished-for shore.

An ablative ABSOLUTE may follow any verbs whatsoever: as,
Imperante Augusto natus est Christus; imperante Tiberio crucifixus.
Christ was born, Augustus reigning; crucified, Tiberius reigning.
Me duce tutus eris.—You will be safe, I being your leader.—(Note 33.)

The noun of PRICE is commonly put in the ablative after verbs of
buying, selling, valuing, &c.: as,

Teruncio seu vitiosâ nuce non emerim.
I would not buy it for a farthing, or a rotten nut.

(Exception from foregoing Rule in Ablative.)

The adjectives *tanti*, *quantī*, *pluris*, *minoris*, *tantidem*, *quantivis*, *quantilibet*, *quanticunque*, denoting worth or price, are put in the genitive without substantives, after verbs of valuing, &c. : as,

Tanti eris aliis, quanti tibi fueris.—CIC.

You will be of so much value to others, as you are to yourself.—(Note 34.)

(Exception from Rule in Ablative.)

The substantives, *floci*, of a lock of wool; *nauci*, of a nutshell; *pili*, of a hair; *assis*, of a penny; *teruncii*, of a farthing; are added in the genitive to verbs of valuing : as,

Me pili aestimat.—He estimates me at a hair.—(Note 34.)

Verbs of OBEYING and RESISTING govern a dative : as,

Semper obtemperat pius filius patri.

A dutiful son always obeys his father.

Verbs of THREATENING and BEING ANGRY govern a dative : as,

Utrique mortem est minitatus.

He threatened death to both.

Adolescenti nihil est, quod succenseam.—TER.

There is no reason why I should be angry with the young man.

Verbs of COMPARING govern a dative : as,

Sic parvis componere magna solebam.—VIRG.

Thus I was used to compare great things to small.—(Note 35.)

Verbs of COMMANDING and TELLING govern a dative : as,

Imperat aut servit collecta pecunia cuique.—HOR.

Money gathered up rules or obeys every (man).

Cui dicas videto.—See to whom you tell it.—(Note 36.)

Except *rego* and *guberno*, to govern, which govern an accusative, and *tempero* and *moderor*, to moderate, . . . an accusative and dative.

Luna regit menses : orbem Deus ipse gubernat.

The moon regulates the months : God himself governs the world.

Temperat ipse sibi.—He governs himself.

Sol temperat omnia luce.—The sun governs all things by its light.

Hic moderatur equos.—He governs his horses.

Qui non moderabitur iræ.—Who will not govern his anger.

FUNGOR, to discharge; *FRUOR*, to enjoy; *UTOR*, to use; *VESCOR*, to feed upon; *MUTO*, to change; *DIGNOR*, to think oneself worthy; *COMMUNICO*, to communicate; *SUPERSEDEO*, to pass by, govern an ablative : as,

Justitiæ fungatur officiis.—Let him discharge the duties of justice.

Alienâ insaniâ frui.—To enjoy another's folly.

Animo bono utare.—Use a good courage.

Vescor carnibus.—I eat flesh.

Haud tali me dignor honore.—I think not myself worthy such honour.

Mutat quadrata rotundis.—He changes square things for round.

Communicabo te mensâ meâ.—I will make you partaker of my table.

Supersedes labore itineris.—Pass by the labour of the march.—CIC.

(Note 37.)

(Say Rules 1, 2, 3, in their order.)

GENITIVE.

3. The PART AFFECTED is put after some verbs in the genitive: as,

Absurdè facis, qui angis te animi.—PLAUT.

You act absurdly, who torment yourself in mind.—(Note 39.)

DATIVE.

Verbs compounded with the adverbs, *benè*, well; *satis*, enough; *malè*, ill; or with the prepositions, *præ*, *ad*, *con*, *sub*, *antè*, *post*, *ob*, *in*, *inter*, generally govern a dative: as,

Dii tibi benefaciant.—May the gods do good to thee.

Meis majoribus præluxi.—I have outshone my ancestors.

Qui occupato adluserit.—Who joked upon him (being) busy.

Conducit hoc tuæ laudi.—This conduces to your praise.

Tignis nidum suspendit hirundo.

The swallow hangs her nest upon the rafters.

Pacem bello antefero.—I prefer peace to war.

Postpono famæ pecuniam.—I postpone money to reputation.

Nemini obtrudi potest.—He can be thrust on nobody.

Impendit omnibus periculum.—Danger overhangs all.

Interfuit his rebus.—He was concerned in these things.—(Note 38.)

(Exception from Rule in Dative.)

ACCUSATIVE.

Not a few of the above compounds change the dative into another case: as,

Præstat ingenio alius alium.

One excels another in ability. QUINCT.—(Note 38.)

2. The PART AFFECTED is put by the poets in the accusative: as,

Candet dentes.—He is white [as to] his teeth.

Rubet capillos.—He is red [as to] his hair.—(Note 39.)

ABLATIVE.

1. The PART AFFECTED is put generally in the ablative: as,

Ægrotat animo magis quàm corpore.

He is sick in mind more than in body.—(Note 39.)

MEREOR, to deserve, accompanied by adverbs of quality, as *benè*, *malè*, *medius*, *pejùs*, *optimè*, *pessimè*, and the like, is joined to an ablative with the preposition *de*: as,

De me nunquam benè meritus est.

He never deserved well of me.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

‡ INTEREST and REFERT, *it concerns*, govern a genitive of the person concerned: as,

Interest magistratûs tuéri bonos.

It concerns the magistrate to defend the good.—(Note 40.)

GENITIVE.

The genitives, *tanti, quanti, magni, parvi, quancūq̃ue, tantidē*, are often added to express the degree of concern: as,

Tanti refert honesta agere.—So much it concerns (you) to do good.

PŒNITET, *it repenteth*; TÆDET, *it wearieth*; MISERET and MISERESCIT, *it pitieth*; PUDET, *it shameth*; PIGET, *it grieveth*; govern a genitive of the thing repented of, and an accusative of the person repenting: as,

Miseret me tui.—I pity thee.

Senectutis suæ eum non pœnitebit.—He will not repent of his old age.—(Note 41.)

DATIVE.

Impersonals, when acquisition is understood, govern a dative: as,

A Deo nobis benefit.

Good is done to us by God.

Tibi licet.—It is lawful for thee.

ACCUSATIVE.

Impersonals put transitively govern an accusative: as,

Me juvat ire per altum.

It delights me to go over the deep.

ATTINET, PERTINET, *it belongs*; and SPECTAT, *it concerns*, govern an accusative with the preposition *ad*: as,

Spectat ad omnes benè vivere.—It concerns all to live well.

ABLATIVE.

‡ INTEREST and REFERT govern also these ablative feminine possessives, *meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ*, and *cujâ*, whose: as,

Tuâ refert teipsum noscere.

It concerns you to know yourself.—(Note 40.)

A verb impersonal of the passive voice may be elegantly used for every person of each number: as, *statur*, *it is stood*, may signify *sto*, I stand, *stas*, thou standest, &c., an ablative case of the person being understood: as,

Statur.—They stand; *i. e. statur* (ab illis).—It is stood by them.

Pugnatum est.—We fought; *i. e. pugnatum est* (a nobis).—It was fought by us.

NAMES OF PLACES.

AT A PLACE.

GENITIVE.

- * * Every verb admits a genitive of the name of the city or place IN WHICH any thing is done, provided it be of the FIRST or SECOND declension, and of the SINGULAR number : as,

Quid Romæ faciam ?—What shall I do at Rome ?—JUV.

These genitive cases, *humī*, on the ground ; *domi*, at home ; *militiæ* and *belli*, in war ; follow the construction of proper names : as,

Parvi sunt foris arma, nisi est consilium domi.—CIC.

Arms are of little worth abroad, unless there is wisdom at home.

Unā semper militiæ et domi fuimus.—TER.

We were always together in war and at home.

DATIVE.

TO A PLACE.

ACCUSATIVE.

After verbs of motion TO A PLACE, the name of the place is commonly put in the accusative, without a preposition : as,

Concessi Cantabrigiam.—I went to Cambridge.—(Note 42.)

Domus, home, and *rus*, the country, are used in like manner : as,

Ite domum, capellæ.—Ye she-goats, go home.—VIRG.

Ego rus ibo.—I will go into the country.

AT AND FROM A PLACE.

ABLATIVE.

- * * But if the name of the city or place be of the PLURAL NUMBER ONLY, or of the THIRD declension, it is put in the ablative : as,

Colchus an Assyrius, Thebis nutritus an Argis.—HOR.

A Colchian or an Assyrian, brought up at Thebes or Argos.

Romæ Tibur amem ventosus ; Tibure Romam.—HOR.

Inconstant, at Rome I love Tibur ; at Tibur, Rome.

After verbs of motion FROM A PLACE, the name of the place is commonly put in the ablative, without a preposition ; as,

Nisi antè Româ profectus esses, nunc eam relinqueres.

If you had not gone from Rome before, you would leave it now.

TERMS OF MEASUREMENT, TIME, & DISTANCE.

GENITIVE.

- * * The measure of any object is put in the genitive, accusative, or ablative :
as,

Area lata pedum denûm.—A floor ten feet broad.—(Note 43.)

DATIVE.

ACCUSATIVE.

- * * The measure of any object is put in the accusative : as,
Turris centum pedes alta.—A tower a hundred feet high.—(Note 43.)

The DURATION OF TIME answering to the question *how long?* is put in the
accusative : as,

Hic jam ter centum totos regnabitur annos.
Here now kings shall reign three hundred whole years.

- * * Extent or distance of place is put in the accusative or ablative : as,
Mille passus processeram.—I had advanced a thousand paces, *or* a mile.

ABLATIVE.

- * * The measure of any object is put in the ablative : as,
Fons latus pedibus tribus.—A fountain three feet wide.—(Note 43.)

The PART OF TIME, answering to the question *when?* is put in the abla-
tive : as,

Nemo mortalium omnibus horis sapit.
No one of mortals is wise at all hours.

- * * Extent or distance is put in the ablative or accusative : as,

Abest ab urbe quingentis millibus passuum.
It is distant from the city five hundred thousand paces, *or* five hundred miles.

ON THE CONSTRUCTION OF PRONOUNS.

The genitive cases of primitive pronouns, *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*, are used when a person is signified: as,

Languet desiderio tui.—She languishes for want of you.
Imago nostri.—The picture of us; i. e. of our person.

The possessive pronouns, *meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, are used when an action, or the possession of any thing is signified: as,

Imago nostra.—Our picture; i. e. which we possess.
Favet desiderio tuo.—He favours your desire.

In order to give greater emphasis, the possessives, *meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, are often followed by the genitives, *ipsius, solius, unius, duorum, trium, paucorum, cujusque*, &c.; and also by the genitives of *participles*, all which genitives agree with the primitive understood in the possessive: as,

Meâ unius operâ.—By the effort of me alone.
Meum solius peccatum.—The offence of me alone.
Scripta mea recitare timentis.—The writings of me fearing to recite.
Tuo ipsius studio.—By the desire of you yourself.
In suâ cujusque laude præstantior.—More excellent each in his own skill.
Nostrâ omnium memoriâ.—In the memory of us all.

Sui and *suis* are reciprocals; i. e. have relation to what went before most remarkable in the sentence: as,

Petrus admiratur se.—Peter admires himself.
Parcit erroribus suis.—He spares his own faults.
Rogat ne se deseras.—He begs you would not forsake him.

N. B. The use of these reciprocals is often absolutely necessary to the perspicuity of a sentence: as,

Cæsar Ariovisto dixit, non se Gallis, sed Gallos sibi intulisse bellum.
Se and *sibi* refer to Cæsar, whereas any other pronoun would have left it in doubt whether Cæsar or Ariovistus was meant.

When a second person is introduced into the sentence, the demonstrative is wanted: as,

De Cæsare malè sentit Cato, *eum* novis rebus studere arbitratur.
Here *se* would indicate the wrong person.

The demonstrative *hic* relates to what is nearest to the person speaking; *iste* to what is near the person addressed; and *ille* to what is at a distance from them both.

When *hic* and *ille* refer to two things before mentioned, *hic* generally relates to the latter, and *ille* to the former of them; as,

Quocunque aspicias, nihil est nisi *pontus* et *aer*;
Nubibus *hic* tumidus, fluctibus *ille* minax.

Whithersoever you look, there is nothing but sea and air; the latter (*hic*) swelling with clouds, the former (*ille*) threatening with waves.

PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, & SUPINES.

Participles, Gerunds, and Supines, govern the same case as the verbs to which they belong : as,

Duplices tendens ad sidera palmas.—VIRG.
Stretching both (his) hands towards the stars.
Efferor studio patres vestros videndi.—CIC.
I am transported with a desire of seeing your fathers.
Utendum est ætate.—We must use time.
Scitatum oracula Phœbi mittimus.—VIRG.
We send to consult the oracles of Apollo.—(Note 44.)

PARTICIPLES.

Participles, when they are used as nouns adjective, i. e. when they signify some quality in the mind of the person, and not any action being done by him at any given time, govern a genitive : as,

Alieni appetens—sui profusus.—SALL.
Greedy of another man's (property)—lavish of his own.—(Note 45.)

The participles *exosus* and *perosus*, signifying "hating," govern an accusative ; signifying "hated," a dative : as,

Astronomus exosus ad unam mulieres.
An astronomer hating women in general.
Exosus Deo et sanctis.—Hated by God and the saints.

The participles *natus*, *prognatus*, *satus*, *cretus*, *creatus*, *ortus*, *editus*, all signifying *family origin* or *descent*, require an ablative, and often with a preposition : as,

Sate sanguine Divûm.—(O thou) sprung from the blood of the gods.
Edita de magno flumine nympha fui.
I was a nymph descended from a great river.

N. B. Their verbs have the same government.

GERUNDS.

The gerund in *di* is used as a genitive governed by a substantive or adjective ;

The gerund in *do*, as an ablative ; and,

The gerund in *dum*, as an accusative : as,

Cecropias innatus apes amor urget habendi.—VIRG.
A natural desire of getting (honey) excites the Attic bees.
Jam certus eundi.—Now sure of going.
Scribendi ratio conjuncta cum loquendo est.—QUINT.
The art of writing is united with speaking.
Alitur vitium vivitque tegendo.
The disease is nourished and lives by concealing (it).
Locus ad agendum amplissimus.
A place very honourable to plead in.—(Note 46.)

Gerunds are elegantly changed into or declined like nouns adjective ; but only those whose verbs govern an accusative : as,

Ad accusandos hominès duci præmio proximum latrocinio est.
To be induced by a bribe to accuse men, is very near to robbery.—(Note 47.)

When DUTY or NECESSITY is to be expressed, the gerund in *dam* is used with the verb *est* : *as*,

Orandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpore sano.—JUV.

We must or should pray, that he may have a sound mind in a sound body.

Vigilandum est ei, qui cupit vincere.

He must watch who desires to conquer.

SUPINES.

The supine in *um* has an active signification, and is used only after verbs or participles of motion : *as*,

Spectatum veniunt.—They come to see.

Milites sunt missi speculatum arcem.

Soldiers were sent to view the citadel.—(Note 48.)

The supine in *u* has a passive signification, and is used only after adjectives : *as*,

Quod factu fœdum est, idem est et dictu turpe.

What is foul to be done, the same is also shameful to be uttered.—(Note 49.)

Verbs which have the same case after as before them.

Verbs which imply SIMPLE EXISTENCE : *as, sum, fio, existo*, I am ;

Verbs passive of TITLE : *as, nominor, dicor, vocor, nuncupor, appellor*, I am called ;

Verbs of ESTIMATION OF CHARACTER : *as, videor, habeor, existimor*, I am esteemed, have the same case after *as* before them : *as*,

Deus est summum bonum.—God is the chief good.

Perpusilli vocantur nani.—Very little people are called dwarfs.

Fides religionis nostræ habetur fundamentum.

Faith is esteemed the foundation of our religion.

Natura beatis omnibus esse dedit.

Nature has granted to all (men) to be happy.

Almost all verbs admit after them an adjective, which agrees with the nominative in case, number, and gender : *as*,

Pii (homines) orant taciti.—Pious (men) pray silent.

Malus pastor dormit supinus.—A bad shepherd sleeps face-upward.

VERBS PASSIVE.

The AGENT or DOER of an action is put after verbs passive in the ablative case, with the preposition *a* or *ab*, and sometimes in the dative : *as*,

Laudatur ab his.—He is praised by these.

Honesti bonis viris quaeruntur.

Honest (things) are aimed at by good men.—(Note 50.)

The other cases continue in verbs passive, which belonged to them as actives : *as*,

Accusaris à me furti.—You are accused by me of theft.

Habeberis ludibrio.—You shall be made a laughing-stock.

Dedoceberis à me istos mores.—You shall be untaught those manners by me.

Privaberis magistratu.—You shall be deprived of your office.

The neuter-passives, *vapulo*, to be beaten; *veneo*, to be sold; *liceo*, to be prized; *exulo*, to be banished; *fit*, to be made, have a passive construction: as,

A præceptore vapulabis.—You shall be beaten by the master.
 Ab hoste venire.—To be sold by the enemy.
 Virtus ab omnibus (hominibus) parvo pretio licet.
 Virtue is set at a low price by all men.
 Cur à convivantibus exulat philosophia?
 Why is philosophy banished by convivial men?
 Quid fiet ab illo?—What shall be done by him?

THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

The infinitive mood is put after certain verbs, participles, and adjectives; and after substantives also in the poets: as,

Dicere quæ puduit scribere jussit amor.—(Note 51.)
 Love commanded (me) to write what it shamed (me) to speak.
 Jussus confundere fœdus.—Commanded to violate the treaty.
 Dignus amari.—Worthy to be loved.
 Tempus abire tibi.—(It is) time for you to be gone. (By the poets.)

The former verb is often omitted by the figure ellipsis: as,

Hinc spargere voces in vulgum ambiguas.—VIRG.
 Upon this (he began) to spread doubtful rumours among the people.

N.B. The word "incipiebat" is understood before "spargere."

This is called the historical infinitive.

ADVERBS.

Adverbs of PLACE, TIME, and QUANTITY, govern a genitive: as,

ADVERBS OF PLACE—*Ubi*, *ubinam*, where; *nusquam*, no where; *eò*, to that pass; *longè*, far; *quò*, whither; *ubivis*, any where, &c. govern a genitive: as,

Ubi gentium?—Where in the world?
 Eò impudentiæ.—To that degree of impudence.
 Quò terrarum abiit?—Whither in the world is he gone?

ADVERBS OF TIME—*Nunc*, now; *tunc*, *tum*, then; *interea*, meanwhile; *pridiè*, the day before; *postridiè*, the day after, &c., govern a genitive: as,

Tunc temporis.—At that time.
 Pridiè ejus diei.—The day before that day.

ADVERBS OF QUANTITY—*Parùm*, little; *satis*, enough; *abundè*, amply, &c., govern a genitive: as,

Satis eloquentiæ—sapientiæ parùm.
 Enough of eloquence—too little of wisdom.
 Abundè fabularum audivimus.—We have heard abundance of fables.

Instar, as big as; and *ergò*, for the sake of; being taken as adverbs, are followed by a genitive: as,

Instar montis.—As big as a mountain.—VIRG.
 Virtutis ergò.—For the sake of virtue.—(Note 52.)

Some adverbs govern the case of the words from which they are derived : *as*,

Sibi inutiliter vivit.—He lives unprofitably to himself.

Proximè Hispaniam sunt Mauri.—The Moors are nearest to Spain.

Optimè omnium.—Best of all.

Amplius opinione morabatur.

He stayed longer than expectation, or than was expected.

En and *ecce*, adverbs of showing, sometimes govern an accusative : *as*,

En quatuor aras.—Behold four altars.

But more frequently a nominative : *as*,

En Priamus !—See Priam !

En and *ecce*, adverbs of upbraiding, govern only the accusative : *as*,

En animum et mentem.—Behold his mind and disposition.—Juv.

The adverbs of difference, *aliter*, otherwise, and *secus*, otherwise, as well as *antè*, before, and *post*, afterwards, are often joined to the ablative : *as*,

Multo aliter.—Much otherwise.

Paulo secus.—Little otherwise.

Multo antè.—Much before.

Paulo post tempore venit.—He came a long time after.

CONJUNCTIONS.

Conjunctions, copulative and disjunctive, couple together like cases, moods, and tenses : *as*,

Socrates docuit Xenophontem et Platonem.

Socrates taught Xenophon and Plato.

Recto stat corpore despicitque terras.

He stands with body erect, and looks down upon the earth.

Nec scribit nec legit.—He neither writes nor reads.

Unless the sense or an opposition of the rules of syntax require it to be otherwise : *as*,

Emi librum centussæ et pluris.

I bought the book for a hundred pence and more.

Centussæ is in the ablative, and *pluris* in the genitive, by rules for the noun of price.

Vixi Romæ et Venetiis.—I have lived at Rome and at Venice.

Romæ is in the genitive, being of the first declension and of the singular number, and *Venetiis* in the ablative, because *Venetiis* has no singular.

CONJUNCTIONS AND ADVERBS, &c., GOVERNING A SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Ne, *an*, *num*, whether, used in a doubtful or indefinite sense, govern a subjunctive mood : *as*,

Nihil refert fecerisne an persuaseris.

It matters nothing whether you did it or persuaded (to it).

Vise num redierit.—Go see whether he be returned.

Dum, signifying "provided that," or "until," governs a subjunctive : *as*,

Dum prosim tibi.—Provided that I may profit you.

Tertis dum regnantem viderit sestis.

Until the third summer shall see him reigning.—(Note 53.)

Qui, signifying the cause or reason of something before stated, and having the force of *quid*, because, governs a subjunctive : *as*,

Stultus es qui huic credas.

You are a fool who believe him, *i. e.* for believing him.

Ut, signifying "although," "forasmuch as," or the final cause, design, or purpose, governs a subjunctive : *as*,

Ut omnia contingant quæ volo, levare non possum.—CIC.

Although all things should happen that I wish, I cannot be relieved.

Non est tibi fidendum ut qui toties fefelleris.

You are not to be trusted, forasmuch as you have so often deceived.

Te oro, Dave, ut jam redeat in viam.—TER.

I entreat you, Davus, that he may now return into the way.

All indefinite words, such as *quis*, *quantus*, *quotus*, govern the subjunctive : *as*,

Cui scribam video.—I see to whom I am writing.—(Note 53.)

PREPOSITIONS.

An ablative case is often governed by a preposition understood : *as*,

Habeo te loco parentis.

I consider you in the place of a parent—*for* in loco.

A preposition in composition frequently governs the same case which is governed by it out of composition : *as*,

Detrudunt naves scopulo.—They thrust the ships from the rock.

Prætereo te insalutatum.—I pass by you unsaluted.

Verbs compounded of *a*, *ab*, *ad*, *con*, *de*, *è*, *ex*, *in*, sometimes elegantly repeat the preposition with its case : *as*,

Abstinerunt à vino.—They abstained from wine.

In, for *erga*, towards ; *contra*, against ; *ad*, to ; and *supra*, above, govern an accusative : *as*,

Accipit in Teucros animum mentemque benignam.—VIRG.

She conceives a kind disposition towards the Trojans.

In comoda publica peccem.—I should offend against the public good.

Sub, when it relates to time, governs an accusative : *as*,

Sub idem tempus.—About the same time.

Super, for *ultrà*, beyond, governs an accusative ; for *de*, concerning, an ablative : *as*,

Multa super Priamo rogitans.—Inquiring much about Priam.

Super Garamantas et Indos.—Beyond the Africans and Indians.

Tenus, as far as, is joined to an ablative both in the singular number and the plural : *as*,

Pectoribus tenus.—Up to the breasts.

Summo tenus attigit ore.

She touched it as far as the tip of her mouth.—VIRG.

Tenus governs a genitive, but only in the plural : *as*,

Crurum tenus.—As far as the legs.

N. B. *Tenus* is always set after its case.

INTERJECTIONS.

Interjections are not uncommonly put without any case : *as*,

Spem gregis, ah ! silice in nudâ connixa reliquit.—VIRG.

Having yeaned, she left the hope of her flock, *alas*, upon the bare flint-stone.

O, in exclamations, is joined to a nominative, accusative, and vocative : *as*,

O festus dies hominis.—O joyful day of man.

O fortunatos agricolas.—O fortunate husbandmen.

O formose puer.—O beautiful boy.

Heu and *proh* ! *alas* ! are joined to a nominative or accusative, and sometimes to a vocative : *as*,

Heu pietas ! heu prisca fides !—*Alas*, piety ! *alas*, ancient fidelity !

Proh Jupiter ! atque hominum fidem !

Alas, Jupiter, and the faith of men.

Proh sancte Jupiter !—O sacred Jupiter !

Hei and *œ*, *alas* ! are joined to a dative case : *as*,

Hei mihi !—*Alas* me !

Væ misero mihi !—*Alas* me wretched !

NOTES ON THE SYNTAX.

I.—CONCORD.

1. Two or more nominatives singular must have a verb plural, which verb must agree with the nominative case of the more worthy person ; and observe, the first person is reckoned more worthy than the second, and the second more worthy than the third : *as*,

Ego et tu sumus in tuto.—*I and thou are in safety.*

Here the word *sumus* is plural, to agree with the two nominatives *ego* and *tu* ; and it is in the first person, to agree with the first person *ego*.

2. The pronoun *ipse* is of all persons : *as*, *ipse amo*, I myself love ; *ipse amas*, thou thyself lovest ; *ipsi amatis*, ye yourselves love ; *ipsi amanti*, they themselves love.

3. Sometimes an infinitive alone serves as the nominative to the verb : *as*,

Miserum est deprehendi.—To be found out is wretched.

Humanum est errare.—To err is human.

4. The conjunction *that* being frequently omitted in English, is apt to mislead the beginner, who must bear in mind that it is always expressed, or its force supplied, in Latin, either by *quòd*, *ut*, *ne*, or *quin*, with a subjunctive, or else by the accusative and infinitive, as in the rule given : thus,

I fear (that) it will be my lot.—*Vereor ne mihi contingat.*

I fear (that) it will not be my lot.—*Vereor ut mihi contingat.*

I doubt not (that) he will come.—*Non dubito quin veniat.*

I wondered (that) you had come.—*Mirabar quid esset quòd venisses.*

II.—CONCORD.

5. Two singulars being equivalent to a plural, two singular substantives may have an adjective or participle plural: as,

Lupus et agnus compulsi.—A wolf and a lamb being driven.

6. The masculine gender is accounted more worthy than the feminine, and the feminine than the neuter; and the adjective plural belonging to two nouns of different genders must agree with the more worthy: as,

Rex et regina sunt beati.—The king and queen are happy.

Here *beati* is plural, and is masculine, to agree with the gender of *rex* rather than with *regina*.

7. When things without life are spoken of, the neuter is reckoned in such case the most worthy; and though the substantives may be masculine or feminine, yet the adjective may be neuter: as,

Arcus et calami sunt bona.—The bow and arrows are good.

Here *arcus* and *calami* are masculine, but *bona* neuter.

8. The gender of a participle or adjective is often determined by the known gender of the person or thing signified in the noun or pronoun: as,

Magna pars hominum vulnerati sunt.

A great part of the men were wounded.

Here *vulnerati* is plural, to agree with the noun of multitude, *pars*; and masculine, because *homines*, men, are meant.

Centauro invehitur magnâ.—He is carried in the great (ship) Centaur.

Here *magnâ* is feminine, to agree with *navi*, which is understood in *Centauro*.

Ego miser or *ego misera*, according as a man or woman is meant.

III.—CONCORD.

9. The relative should be considered as between two substantives, and then it agrees with the preceding (which is therefore called the antecedent) in number and gender, and with the succeeding one in case: as,

Non dejeci te ex loco, in quem (locum) prohibui ne venires.—Cic.

I have not ejected you from a place, into which place I hindered you from coming.

When the relative belongs to two antecedents, it is subject to the same rule as the adjective in the like case: as,

Arcus et calami, quæ fregisti.—The bow and arrows, which you broke.

Here *quæ* is neuter, *arcus* and *calami* being inanimate things.

10. Sometimes the relative agrees in person with the primitive understood in the possessive pronoun: as,

. . . . *Omnes laudare fortunas meas*

Qui gnatum haberem tali ingenio præditum.

All praised my good fortune, or the good fortune of *me*, who had a son endowed with such a disposition.

Here *qui haberem* are in the first person singular, to agree with *mei*, understood in *meas*.

11. The relative sometimes agrees in gender with some noun understood in the antecedent, rather than with the antecedent itself : as,

Daret ut catenis
Fatale monstrum, *quæ* generosius
Perire quærens, &c.—HOR.

That he might give to chains the fatal monster, who seeking to perish more nobly, &c.

Here *quæ* is feminine, to agree with Cleopatra, understood in the neuter word *monstrum*.

12. *Qualis, quantus, quot*, follow the nature and conform to the construction of the relative : as,

In hoc crudelissimo bello, *quale* bellum nulla unquam barbaria cum sua gente gessit.

In this most cruel war, *such* as no barbarous country ever waged with its own people.

Here *quale* is governed by *gessit*.

CONSTRUCTION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

13. The latter of two substantives may elegantly be turned into a possessive adjective, which will agree with the former in gender : as,

The sentiment of a king.—Regia sententia.
A father's authority.—Patria auctoritas.

N. B. The particle *of* is apt to mislead, as indicating a genitive, when it should sometimes be rendered by a preposition with an ablative : as by *de*, if it signify *concerning*; by *a, ab*, if it signify *from*; or by *e, ex*, if it signify *out of*.

For instance, the material of which any thing is made is put in the ablative with *e* or *ex* : as,

Cups made of gold.—Pocula ex auro facta.
A statue of marble.—Signum e marmore.

14. The term of praise or dispraise cannot be put in the genitive or ablative, unless an adjective or participle accompany the substantive : thus,

A man of wisdom, cannot be expressed by *vir sapientia*.
It must be *vir sapiens*; but we can say, *vir miræ sapientiæ*.

15. *Opus*, need, is perhaps the substantive *opus*, a work, office, or business : as,

Opus est mihi nummis.—I have an affair (de) concerning money.
Viribus opus est.—The work is one (de) concerning strength.

Opus, when construed *necessary*, is the same substantive : as,

Dux nobis et auctor opus est.
Our whole business or affair is a leader ; i. e. to get a leader.

N. B. *Opus* is always accompanied by *est* for *habeo*, not by *habeo* itself. We do not say *habeo opus*, but *est mihi opus*.

16. *Apposition* is when a second substantive in the same case explains some character of the former.

CONSTRUCTION OF ADJECTIVES.

17. When a neuter adjective is said to govern a genitive, some substantive is understood, as *negotium* or the like : as,

Quantum nummorum servat in arcâ,
Tantum habet et fidei.—Juv.

As large (a matter) of money as a man keeps in his chest,
So large (a stock) of credit has he.

18. The ablative, which follows comparative adjectives, is governed by the preposition *præ* understood : as,

Leviior plumâ.—Lighter : *præ plumâ*, in comparison of a feather.
Fortior est patre filius.
The son is the stronger, *præ patre*, in comparison to the father.

19. The ablative is often understood after a comparative to express *too much*, or *more than ordinary* : as,

Tristior, more sad than usual—*solito* understood.
Severior, too severe—*æquo* understood.

20. When the particle *the* stands before two comparatives in immediate succession, and marks the degree of excess or defect, it is rendered by *quanto* or *quo*, followed by *tanto* or *eo* : as,

The more exalted we are, the more humble we should be.
Quanto majores sumus, tanto submissius nos geramus.
The more difficult the work, the more glorious.
Quo difficilius, eo clarius.

21. The pronoun-adjective *idem* sometimes takes after it a dative : as,

Invitum qui servat, *idem* facit occidenti.
He who preserves a man against his will, does the same act as one who slays.

22. Nouns partitive, i. e. which imply a part of several things, nouns of number, comparatives and superlatives, and adjectives, used in like manner, require a genitive of the following noun, with which noun also they agree in gender : as,

Take which of these you had rather.—*Utrum horum mavis accipe.*
The first of the Roman kings.—*Primus Romanorum regum.*
The right is the stronger of the hands.—*Dextra est fortior manuum.*
Sancte deorum.—O sacred one of the gods.

In these instances *rex*, *manus*, and *deus* or *ex numero*, are evidently understood.

If the former substantive is of a different gender from that governed by the partitives, the adjective may agree with either : as,

Leo est fortissimus animalium, or fortissimum.

But the English expressions, *the first of*, *the midst of*, *the rest of*, do not require a genitive after *primus*, *medius*, *relíquus*, but have the following noun in the same case with them : as,

I now remark briefly on *the rest of your speech.*
Nunc dico pauca in reliquam tuam orationem.
He fell into *the midst of the ranks.*—*In medias acies incidit.*
He was sailing in *the middle of the sea.*—*In medio mari navigabat.*

Partitive nouns are used also with an accusative with *ad* or *inter*: *as*,

First of all.—*Primus inter omnes, or ante omnes*;

and with an ablative with *a, ab, de, e, ex*: *as*,

Tertius ab Æneâ.—The third from Æneas.

Solus de superis.—The only one of the gods.

Minor e pueris.—The younger of the boys.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF VERBS.

23. The genitive of the crime, charge, or subject of admonition, after verbs of accusing, &c., is governed of some such word as *crimine, re, actione, pœna, nomine, or causâ*: *as*,

Accusat furti (crimine).—He accuses of the crime of theft.

Absolutus est furti (actione).—He was acquitted of the charge of theft.

24. This explains why *uterque, nullus, &c.*, are to be limited to the ablative. They agree with one or other of those words, the genitive being still understood: *as*,

Accuso utroque (crimine, i. e. furti et homicidii).

Neutro accuso (crimine).—*Ambobus (criminibus) accuso, &c.*

25. The genitive after *sum*, implying *duty, property, &c.*, is in fact the latter of two substantives, the former being *officium, res*, or the previous substantive repeated: *as*,

Pecus est Melibœi; *i. e. Pecus est pecus Melibœi*.

Est adolescentis; *i. e. Est officium adolescentis*.

26. The accusative of the thing asked, taught, &c., is governed by the preposition *secundum* understood: *as*,

Doceo te grammaticam; *i. e. secundum grammaticam, as regards grammar*.

Hence it is that the accusative follows even the passive verb: *as*,

Dedoceberis istos mores; *i. e. secundum istos mores*.

You shall be untaught *as* to those manners.

But verbs of asking often have the person asked in the ablative, with *a, ab, or de*: *as*,

Veniamque oramus ab ipso.—And we ask permission of himself.

Peto never has an accusative of the person, but an ablative always: *as*,

Petivit dacem ab Atheniensibus.

He asked a commander of the Athenians.

Verbs of clothing sometimes have the article of dress in the ablative, as *Induo te tunicâ*; and the person sometimes in the dative, as *Induo tibi tunicam*, I put thee on a cloak.

27. *Satago* requires a genitive, *as* being compounded of *sat* or *satis*, and *ago*, of which *sat* may be considered a neuter adjective: *as*,

Satagit rerum; *i. e. agit sat rerum*.—He is doing enough of business.

Misereor takes a genitive *as* governed by *causâ* or *miseriam* understood: *as*,

Miserere fratris.—*Miserere causâ fratris*—or *miseriam fratris*.

Have compassion for the sake of your brother; or,

Pity the misery of your brother.

28. When *memini* signifies *to make mention*, it takes either a genitive or an ablative with *de* : as,

Cæsaris, or de Cæsare meminit.—He made mention of Cæsar.

29. The ablative of the instrument does not admit of a preposition ; the cause or manner sometimes does : as,

Præ irâ. Magnâ cum celeritate.

30. Neuter verbs have an accusative, not only of nouns strictly cognate, or related to them, but also of such as are of a similar signification : as,

Sitire sanguinem.—To thirst for blood.

These accusatives are governed by *juxta* or *secundum* understood.

31. Verbs of giving, comparing, trusting, commanding, telling, threatening, promising, &c., take also, as verbs transitive, an accusative of the thing : as,

Æs alienum numeravit.—He paid the debt (to me).

32. The verbs *dono* and *impertio* frequently vary the construction, by putting the person in the accusative, and the thing given in the ablative : as,

Donare civitatem alicui.—To give the freedom of the city to any one.

Or,

Donare aliquem civitate.—To present any one with the freedom of the city.

33. The ablative absolute (which is so called because it is independent of, *i. e.* not grammatically connected with any other part of the sentence) is governed by *sub*, or some other preposition understood : as,

Augusto imperante—*sub* *Augusto imperante.*

Me consule—I being consul ; *or*, *sub* *me consule*, *under* me the consul.

Deo juvante—God helping ; *or*, *cum* *Deo juvante*, *with* God helping.

It is known by the English signs, *being*, *being done*, or *having done* ; or it may be used for conditional or relative clauses beginning with *when*, *after*, *since*, or *who* : as,

Hac habitâ oratione concilium dimisit.

This speech being made—having made this speech—*or*, when he had made this speech, he dismissed the assembly.

34. The genitives *tanti*, *quanti*, &c., following verbs of *valuing*, agree with the substantive *æris* understood, which is itself governed by *pretio* : as,

Tanti æstimat—*tanti æris pretio æstimat.*

The genitives *floci*, *nauci*, are governed in like manner by *pretio*.

35. Verbs of comparing often take an accusative with the prepositions *ad* or *inter*, and an ablative with the preposition *cum* : as,

Hæc non sunt inter se conferenda.

These things are not to be compared together.

Compare Virgilium cum Homero.—I compare Virgil with Homer.

36. The accusative after *impero* is of something required in the sense of *levying* or *imposing* : as,

Imperare hostibus frumentum.—To levy corn on the enemy.

Jubeo requires an accusative followed by an infinitive : *as*,

Me jussit abire.—He bid me depart.

Loquor, in *prose*, takes an ablative of the person with *cum* : *as*,

Tecum loquitur.—He speaks with thee.

37. The ablative after *muto* is of the thing taken in exchange : *as*,

Mutavit mensam horologio.—He exchanged a table for a clock.

38. These compounds of *præ*, *ad*, *in*, and *ob*, govern an accusative :

præcedo, *præcurro*, *prævertor*, *prævenio*.

adeo, *adjuvo*, *alloquor*, *admiror*.

impedio, *invado*, *invenio*.

obeo, *occido*, *oppugno*.

39. When the part affected is put in the ablative, it may be considered as governed by the preposition *in* ; when in the accusative, by the preposition *secundum* ; and when in the genitive, by *dolore*, or some other appropriate substantive : *as*,

Ægrotat (in) animo.

Candet (secundum) dentes.

Discrucior animi (dolore).

40. The impersonals *interest* and *refert* are said to govern the ablative feminine possessives *meâ*, *tuâ*, &c. Some call them accusatives neuter. In either case a substantive is understood ; *as*, *re*, *causâ*, or *negotia*. The government of the genitive is hence easily accounted for : *as*,

Interest magistratûs—*interest (de causâ) magistratûs ; or, inter negotia magistratûs.*

Refert Ciceronis—*refert causâ Ciceronis.*

Interest (inter) nostra (negotia).—It concerns us.

Refert tua (inter negotia) te ipsum noscere.—It concerns you.

41. *Pœnitet* may be resolved into *pœna habet* or *tenet* : *as*,

Pœnitet me tui fratris.

Pœna tui fratris habet, or tenet me.

Tædet may be resolved into *tædium habet* : *as*,

Tædet me vitæ—*tædium vitæ habet me.*

42. The names of countries must have a preposition before them after verbs of motion : *as*,

In Asiam iturus erat.—He was about to go into Asia.

So must appellatives : *as*,

Ad templum Palladis ibant.

43. The term of measurement, when in the accusative, is governed by *ad* ; when in the ablative, by *præ* or *tenus* ; and when in the genitive, by *spatio* : *as*,

Turris alta (ad) centum pedes.

Fons latus (tenus) pedibus tribus.

Arca lata (spatio) pedum denum.

PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

44. The only participle answering to the Greek active aorist, is the perfect of a transitive deponent: as,

Cohortatus suos prœlium commisit.
Having exhorted his (men), he began to fight.

45. When a participle becomes a noun by being used without regard to time, it may be considered as the former of two substantives, of which the latter is then properly in the genitive: as,

Amans virtutis.—A lover of virtue.

46. The gerund in *do* is either governed by a preposition, or is the ablative of the instrument, as in the examples given: *conjuncta cum loquendo*, joined with speaking; *alitur tegendo*, is nourished by concealing.

The gerund in *dum* is governed by those prepositions which govern an accusative case: as, *ad agendum*.

47. Those gerunds only can be declined like or used as adjectives, whose verbs govern an accusative. We could not say, "*veni tui serviendi causâ*," because *servo* governs a dative, but "*veni ut tibi servirem*."

SUPINES.

48. The active supine in *um* may be considered as an accusative of the fourth declension, and therefore put after a verb of motion.

The future infinitive passive, it is conjectured, is perhaps made up of this supine and the infinitive passive, or what would be the infinitive passive of *eo*, to go. Thus in the sentence,

Eum a consule occisum iri arbitrabar.
I thought he was about to be slain by the consul; or,
Iri a consule.—That the consul was going to slay him.—PORT ROYAL GR.

We may observe here, that the sign *to* is often used in English, when the Latin infinitive would be improper. It may be rendered various ways: as,

He came to redeem his daughter.
Venit redempturus filiam.
Venit ut filiam redimeret.
Venit filiam redimendi causâ.
Venit filiæ redimendæ causâ.
Venit ad redimendam filiam.
Venit redemptum filium, with the supine.

The English sign *to* is rendered by *ut* and a subjunctive only after verbs of asking, fearing, commanding, and such as express desire, affection, or duty, as *curo, laboro, volo*; or those which signify some event or agreement, as *fit, evenit, contingit, convenit*, and the like.

49. The supine in *u* is used after *fas, nefas, opus*, as well as after adjectives: as,

Hoc fas est dictu.

50. Verbs which do not govern an accusative case in the active voice, cannot be used personally in the passive. Such verbs must be taken impersonally, or with a transposition of the active : as,

He was succeeded by his son.—*Successit ei filius.*
He is indulged too much.—*Illi nimium indulgetur.*

51. When the latter of two verbs is in the infinitive, the construction is the same as when an accusative intervenes, which in sense it actually does : as,

I resolved to set out.—*Statui proficisci ; i. e. me proficisci.*
Negat velle ; i. e. negat se velle.

Sallust frequently uses the complete form : as,

They who desire to excel the other animals.
Qui sese student præstare cæteris animalibus, instead of
Qui præstare student.

ADVERBS.

52. *Instar*, construed as *big as*, is the indeclinable substantive *instar*, size, likeness, and used as an accusative after *juxta* understood : as,

Instar montis—juxta instar montis.
According to the likeness of a mountain.
Eργὸ is the same with *ἐργον* in the Greek.

CONJUNCTIONS OR ADVERBS GOVERNING A SUBJUNCTIVE.

53. These adverbial conjunctions govern a subjunctive :

Dum, modò, and *dummodo*, provided that.
Cùm or *quum*, since.
Ut, si, and *licèt*, although.
Ut, utinam, O si, expressing a wish.
Quo and *ut*, to the end that.
Nè, lest.
Ut pote cùm and *quippe cùm*, seeing that.
Quin, for *quo minus, ut non, quod non*.

These govern an indicative :

Dum and *donec*, whilst.
Quippe, because.
Ut, as or when.
Nè, an, and *num*, asking the question *whether* ?
Nè, 'do not,' used for a prohibition, takes an imperative or subjunctive, generally the latter.

THE PRINCIPAL RULES OF THE ETON SYNTAX.

I.—CONCORD.

Verbum personale concordat cum nominativo numero et personâ : ut,
Sera nunquam est ad bonos mores via.

Aliquando oratio est verbo nominativus : ut,
Ingenuas didicisse fideliter artes
Emollit mores.

Verba infinitivi modi frequenter pro nominativo accusativum ante se statuunt,
conjunctione *quod* vel *ut* omissâ : ut,
Te rediisse incolumem gaudeo.

II.—CONCORD.

Adjectiva, participia, et pronomina, cum substantivo, genere, numero, et casu,
concordant : ut,

Rara avis in terris.

Aliquando oratio supplet locum substantivi : ut,
Audito regem Doroberniam proficisci.

III.—CONCORD.

Relativum cum antecedente concordat, genere, numero, et personâ : ut,
Vir bonus est, qui leges juraque servat.
Regnum, quod florebat.
Libri, qui scripti sunt.

Aliquando oratio ponitur pro antecedente : ut,
In tempore veni, quod rerum omnium est primum.

Si nominativus relativo et verbo interponatur, relativum regitur a verbo, aut ab
aliâ dictione, quæ cum verbo in oratione locatur : ut,
Gratia ab officio, quod mora tardat, abest.

CONSTRUCTION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

Quum duo substantiva diversæ significationis concurrunt, posterius in genitivo
ponitur : ut,

Crescit amor nummi.

Hic genitivus aliquando in dativum vertitur : ut,
Urbi pater est.

Laus, vituperium, vel qualitas rei ponitur in ablativo, etiam genitivo : ut,
Ingenui vultus puer.—Vir nullâ fide.

Adjectiva et substantiva regunt ablativum significantem causam, et formam vel
modum rei : ut,

Trojanus origine Cæsar.

CONSTRUCTION OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectiva, quæ desiderium, notitiam, memoriam, timorem, atque iis contraria, significant, genitivum exigunt : ut,

Novitatis avida.—Præscia futuri.—Memor ævi.
Immemor beneficii.—Rudis belli.

Verbalia in *bilis* accepta passivè, et participialia in *das*, dativum postulant : ut,

. . . Nulli penetrabilis astro
Lucus inera.
O mihi post nullos, Juli, memorande sodales.

Comparativa, cùm exponantur per *quam*, ablativum admittunt : ut,
Fortior est patre filius.—Ære perennius.

Adjectiva, quæ ad copiam egestatemve pertinent, interdum ablativum, interdum genitivum, exigunt : ut,

Dives equorum.—Melle fecundissimus.

Adjectiva, quibus commodum, incommodum, similitudo, dissimilitudo, voluptas, submissio, aut relatio ad aliquid significatur, dativum postulant : ut,

Patriæ idoneus, utilis agris.
Similis patri.—Jucundus amicis.
Supplex omnibus.—Finitimus oratori.

Dignus, indignus, præditus, captus, contentus, extorris, fræus, liber, cum adjectivis prædium significantibus, ablativum exigunt : ut,

Dignus odio.—Tali ingenio præditus.
Oculis capti talpæ.—Terroris liber animus.

CONSTRUCTION OF VERBS.

Verba accusandi, damnandi, monendi, absolvendi, et similia, genitivum postulant, qui crimen significat : ut,

Alterum accusat probri.—Sceleris condemnat generum suum.
Admoneto illum pristinæ fortunæ.—Furti absolutus.

Verba transitiva cujuscunque generis, sive activi, sive deponentis, sive communis, exigunt accusativum : ut,

Percontatorem fugito.

Verba rogandi, docendi, vestiendi, celandi, ferè duplicem regunt accusativum : ut,
Tu modo posce deos veniam.—Dedocebo te istos mores.

Satago, misereor, et miseresco, genitivum postulant : ut,
Is rerum suarum satagit.—Miserere laborum.

Reminiscor, obliviscor, meminî, recordor, genitivum aut accusativum admittunt : ut,
Datæ fidei reminiscitur.—Hujus meriti recordor.
Hæc olim meminisse juvabit.

Est pro habeo regit dativum : ut,

Est mihi namque domi pater, est injusta noverca.

Quodvis verbum admittit ablativum significantem instrumentum, aut causam, aut modum actionis : ut,

Hi jaculis defendunt.—Rem celeritate peregit.

Quibuscumque verbis additur ablativus absolute sumptus : ut,

Imperante Augusto natus est Christus, imperante Tiberio crucifixus.
Me duce tutus eris.

Potior aut genitivo aut ablativo jungitur : ut,

Romani signorum et armorum potiti sunt.
Egressi optatâ potiuntur Troes arenâ.

Omnia verba regunt dativum ejus rei, cui aliquid acquiritur aut adimitur : ut,

Quis te mihi casus ademit ?

Verba dandi et reddendi, promittendi et solvendi, fidendi, obsequendi et repugnandi, minandi et irascendi, regunt dativum : ut,

Fortuna multis dat nimis. Quæ tibi promitto.
Vacuis committere venis. Pius filius semper obtemperat patri.
Utrique mortem est minitatus.

Verba comparandi regunt dativum : ut,

Sic parvis componere magna solebam.

Verba abundandi, implendi, onerandi, et his diversa, ablativo junguntur : ut,

Amore abundas, Antipho.
Sylla omnes suos divitiis explevit.
Te hoc crimine expedi.

Ex quibus quædam nonnunquam genitivum regunt : ut,

Implentur veteris Bacchi.
Quasi tu hujus indigeas patris.

Verba imperandi et nuntiandi regunt dativum : ut,

Imperat aut servit collecta pecunia cuique.
Cui dicas videto.

Excipe *rego* et *guberno*, quæ accusativum habent ; *tempero* et *moderor*, quæ nunc dativum, nunc accusativum habent : ut,

Luna regit menses, orbem Deus ipse gubernat.
Temperat ipse sibi, qui non moderabitur iræ.
Hic moderatur equos.—Sol temperat omnia luce.

Verba, quæ commodum aut incommodum significant, dativum postulant : ut,

Non potes mihi commodare nec incommodare.

Ex his, *juvo*, *lædo*, *delecto*, *offendo*, et alia quædam, accusativum exigunt : ut,

Fessum quies plurimum juvat.—Glacies frigida lædit molle pecus.

Fungor, *fruor*, *utor*, *vescor*, *dignor*, *muto*, *communico*, *supersedeo*, ablativo junguntur : ut,

Justitiæ fungatur officiis.—Animo bono utare.
Mutat quadrata rotundis.—Vescor carnibus.

Dativum ferme regunt verba composita cum his adverbis, *benè*, *satis*, *malè* ; vel cum his præpositionibus, *præ*, *ad*, *con*, *sub*, *ante*, *post*, *ob*, *in*, *inter* : ut,

Dii tibi benefaciant.—Meis majoribus præluxi.
Conducit hoc tuæ laudi.—Postpono famæ pecuniam.
Tignis nidum suspendit hirundo.

NAMES OF PLACES, &c.

Omne verbum admittit genitivum oppidi nominis, in quo fit actio, modò primæ vel secundæ declinationis et singularis numeri sit : ut,

Quid Romæ faciam ?

Verum si oppidi nomen pluralis duntaxat numeri aut tertiæ declinationis fuerit, in ablativo ponitur : ut,

Thebis nutritus, an Argis.

Verbis significantibus motum ad locum ferè additur nomen loci in accusativo sine præpositione : ut,

Concessi Cantabrigiam.

Quæ significant *partem* temporis, in ablativo frequentius ponuntur : ut,

Nemo mortalium omnibus horis sapit.

Quæ autem *durationem* temporis significant, in accusativo fere ponuntur : ut,

Ter centum annos regnabitur.

PRONOUNS.

Mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri, genitivi primitivorum ponuntur, cùm persona significatur : ut,

Languet desiderio tui.—Imago nostri.

Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, ponuntur, cùm actio vel possessio rei significatur : ut,

Imago nostra.—Favet desiderio tuo.

Sui et *suius* reciproca sunt : hoc est, semper reflectuntur ad id quod præcipuum in sententiâ præcessit : ut,

Petrus nimium admiratur se.—Parcit erroribus suis.

VERBS SUBSTANTIVE, &c.

Verba substantiva, ut *sum, fio, existo* ; verba vocandi passiva, ut *dicor, vocor, nuncupor* ; et iis similia, ut *videor, habeor, existimor*, utrinque eodem casu habent : ut,

Deus est summum bonum.

Perpusilli vocantur nani.

Natura beatis omnibus esse dedit.

PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

Participia, gerundia, et supina, regunt casus suorum verborum : ut,

Duplices tendens ad sidera palmas.

Efferor studio patres vestros videndi.

Utendum est ætate.

Scitatum oracula Phœbi mittimus.

Supinum in *um* activè significat et sequitur verbum aut participium significans motum ad locum : ut,

Spectatum veniunt.—Milites sunt missi speculatum arcem.

Supinum in *a* passivè significat et sequitur nomina adjectiva : ut,
Quod factu fœdum est, idem est et dictu turpe.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Verbis quibusdam, participiis, et adjectivis, adduntur verba infinita, et poeticè substantivis : ut,

Dicere puduit.—Scribere jussit.—Dignus amari.
Tempus abire tibi.

CONJUNCTIONS.

Conjunctiones copulativæ et disjunctivæ similes casus, modos, et tempora conjungunt : ut,

Socrates docuit Xenophontem et Platonem.

Nisi ratio variae constructionis aliud poscat : ut,

Emi librum centussi et pluris.
Vixi Romæ et Venetiis.

PROSODY.

PROSODY teaches the quantity or just measure of syllables.

A short syllable is marked thus, [˘] as *dēmīnā˘s*.

A long syllable is marked thus, [—] as *cōntrā˘*.

A common syllable, that is, one that is either long or short, thus [˘] or [—], as *unī˘ us*.

The quantity of syllables depends upon the time spent in pronouncing them ; thus in comparing the syllables which compose the word *understanding* with the syllables which make up the word *facility*, it will be perceived that the former are slow and heavy, the latter light and quick of utterance. The former are therefore called *long*, and the latter *short* syllables.

Common syllables are those which have sometimes a long stress laid on them, and at other times are passed over with rapidity : thus the word *unius* may in poetry be pronounced either *u-nius* or *unī-us*, just as the letter *i* in the words *variety* and *variable*.

Syllables are long, short, or common either by nature, as in the above examples, or by accident, when by reason of their situation in a verse, and the letters which follow them, they are capable of being pronounced quicker or slower. In this latter case they are said to be long or short by position.

N. B. One long syllable is reckoned equivalent in time to two short ones, and all contracted syllables are long.—(See 1st note on Contraction.)

THE QUANTITY OF THE LAST SYLLABLE OF WORDS.

RULES FOR FINAL VOWELS.	EXCEPTIONS.
<p>The Vowels <i>a, i, u</i>, final, are LONG : as,</p> <p><i>amā</i>, love thou.</p> <p><i>dominī</i>, of a lord.</p> <p><i>amatū</i>, to be loved.</p>	<p>But <i>puīlā</i>, suppose ; <i>īlā</i>, thus ; <i>quīlā</i>, because ; <i>postēlā</i>, afterwards ; <i>ejā</i>, oh ! have the <i>a</i> short.—(Note 1.)</p> <p>All cases ending in <i>a</i>, of whatever gender, number, or declension, are short : as, <i>musā</i>, <i>regnā</i>, <i>operā</i> ; except the ablative of the first declension, which is always long : as, <i>musā</i>, with a song.</p> <p>Numerals in <i>ginta</i> have the <i>a</i> common, but generally long : as, <i>trīginta</i>, thirty.</p> <p>The datives <i>mīlī</i>, <i>tībī</i>, <i>sībī</i>, with the adverbs <i>ubī</i>, where, and <i>ibī</i>, there, have the <i>i</i> common.—(Note 2.)</p> <p><i>Nīlī</i>, unless, and <i>quālī</i>, as if, have the <i>i</i> short.</p>
<p>E final is SHORT : as,</p> <p><i>marē</i>, the sea.</p> <p><i>legē</i>, read thou.</p>	<p>But ablatives of the fifth declension are long : as, <i>fidē</i>, by faith ; <i>diē</i>, in a day.—(Note 3.)</p> <p>So are adverbs derived from them : as,</p> <p><i>hodiē</i>, to-day, from <i>hōc diē</i>, this day.</p> <p><i>quarē</i>, wherefore, from <i>quā rē</i>, for which thing.</p> <p>The second person singular of the imperative of the second conjugation has <i>ē</i> long : as, <i>docē</i>, teach thou ; <i>movē</i>, move thou.—(Note 4.)</p> <p>Adverbs in <i>e</i>, if derived from adjectives of three terminations, are long : as, <i>doctē</i>, learnedly ; <i>pulchrē</i>, beautifully ; derived from <i>doctus</i>, <i>pulcher</i>.—(Note 5.)</p> <p>So is <i>valdē</i>, greatly, contracted for <i>validē</i>, from <i>validus</i>.</p> <p><i>Fermē</i> and <i>ferē</i>, almost, are also long.</p> <p><i>Benē</i>, well, and <i>malē</i>, badly, are always short.</p>

EXCEPTIONS.

O final is common : as,
dicō, I say.
virgō, a virgin.

Oblique cases in o (i. e. any case but the nominative) are always long : as the dative or ablative *templō*, to or from a temple ; *damnō*, to or by a loss.

Adverbs derived from adjectives are also long : as, *primō*, firstly ; *liquidō*, clearly ; but, *sedulō*, diligently ; *mutuō*, mutually ; and *crebrō*, frequently, are common.

Modō, only, and *quomodō*, how, are always short.

Citō, quickly ; *duo*, *ego*, and *homo*, a man, are very seldom long.

RULES FOR FINAL CONSONANTS.

The consonants c and
n final are long : as,
posthāc, hereafter.
Pæān, a hymn to
Apollo.

But *doncē*, until ; *forsān* and *fortissān*, perhaps ; and *tamēn*, yet, are short.

Nouns in *en*, increasing in *itis* short in the genitive, are short in the nominative : as, *crimēn*, *crimēnis*, a crime.

Words contracted by the figure apocope have the final syllable short : as, *vidēn*, for *vidēsne*, dost thou see ? *audēn*, for *audīesne*, dost thou hear ?

The adverbs, *cūn*, thenceforth ; *cubīn*, thereupon ; *deīn*, moreover ; *proīn*, therefore, are short.

B, D, T, L, R, final, are
SHORT : as,
āb, isthūd, capūt,
consūl, Cæsār.
(Note 7.)

Certain Hebrew names in *el* are long : as,

Michāēl, *Daniēl*.

As, es, and os, final,
are LONG : as,
amās,
nubēs,
honōs.—(Note 8.)

Nouns which increase short in the genitive are themselves short : as, *milēs*, *millis*, a soldier ; *segetis*, standing corn ; *divēs*, *divitis*, rich.

But yet *abīs*, *abitis*, a fir-tree ;

ariēs, *aritis*, a ram ; and

Cerēs, *Cerēris*, the goddess of corn ;

although they increase short, are long in the nominative.

Penēs, in the power of, with *compēs*, sure, and *impēs*, unable, are short.

Is and us final are
SHORT : as,

panīs,
amamūs.

Oblique cases plural in *is* are long : as, *musis*. So is *quis*, or *queis*, when used for *quibus*.

Nouns increasing long, are long in the nominative : as, *Samnis*, *Samnitis*, a Samnite ; *salus*, *salutis*, health.

The second person singular of verbs is long, where they make the second plural in *itis* long : as, *audis*, *celis*, and *revertis*, when in the future subjunctive, making *auditis*, *celitis*, and *revertitis* in the plural.

Lastly, the genitive singular, and the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural of the fourth declension, are long : as, genitive, *manūs*, of a hand ; nominative, accusative, and vocative plural, *manūs*, hands.—(Note 9.)

QUANTITY OF THE FIRST AND MIDDLE SYLLABLES OF WORDS.

Of these there are three cases : 1. a vowel before a single consonant ; 2. a vowel before two consonants, or a double one ; 3. a vowel before another vowel.

I. A vowel before a single consonant in the beginning or middle of a primitive word is accounted long, short, or common, according to the authority or general usage of the poets : as, *āmo, lēgo, sōlor*. Here the *a* and *e* are short, and the *o* long, by general usage.

EXCEPTIONS.

II. A vowel before two consonants, or a double consonant, is LONG by POSITION : as,

Majōr sūm quān cui possit fortuna nocēre.
—I am greater than (he) whom fortune can injure.

Here *o* is long before *r* and *s*; *u* before *m* and *q*; *a* before *u* and *c*; *i* before *t* and *f*; and the *a* in *major* is long before *j*.*
—(Note 10.)

III. A vowel before another vowel in the same word is SHORT : as,

Dēus, mēus, tūus, pīus.
(Note 12.)

Every diphthong is LONG in Latin : as,
aurum, neuter, mussē.
(Note 14.)

Perfects and supines of two syllables have the former syllable LONG : as the perfects *lēgi, ēmi*, and the supines *vīsum, lātum*.

1. If a word end with a short vowel, and the next word begin with two consonants, the preceding vowel is sometimes, but seldom made long : as,

Ferte citi ferrum, date tela, scandite muros.—VIRG.
Bring quick the arms, give darts, scale the walls.

The *a* in *tela*, short by a previous rule, is here made long by its position before *scandite*, which begins with two consonants.

2. A vowel, originally short, when it comes before a mute, followed by a liquid, is thereby rendered common : as,

pāter, pātris; volūcer, volūcris, swift.

But a long vowel remains long : as,
arātum, arāre, to plough ; *arātrum*, a plough.

(Note 11.)

Genitives in *iūs* have the *i* common : as,
unius or *uniūs, illius* or *illius* ;
but in *alterius* it is always short,
in *alius* . . . always long.—(Note 13.)

The genitive and dative of the fifth declension have the vowel *e* long, when it comes between two *i*'s, as in *faci-ē-i*, but not otherwise : as, *rēi, spēi, fidēi*.

The syllable *fi* in *fio* is long, unless it is followed by *e* and *r* together, when it is short : as,

Omnia jam fiunt, fieri quæ posse negabam.

All things are now done, which I denied to be possible to happen.

Dius, divine, has its former syllable long ; *Diana*, the goddess, common.

Ohe, enough, has its former syllable common.

But *præ* followed by a vowel is short : as,

præire, præustus, præampus.

But these perfects make the former syllable short : *bibi, dēdi, scidi, stēti, stīti, tūli*, and *fidi* from *findo*.

And these supines : *dātum, itum, litum, sātum, sītum*, and *stātum*.

Perfects which repeat the first consonant of the present have their first syllable SHORT : as, *cado cēcidi, fallo fēfelli, mordeo mōmordi*.

The syllables *ce, fe, mo*, are short.

* The rules for short final consonants *b, d, t, l, r, s*, and *us*, &c. hold good only when the following word begins with a vowel, and are superseded by the above rule of position if the next word begins with a consonant. Thus the syllables *jor* and *sit* are by the previous rule short, but become long in the above line, because they are placed before words beginning with consonants.

MONOSYLLABLES.

1. Monosyllables ending with *b, d, t, l, r*, are **SHORT**: as,
ăb, ăd, ăt, vėl, and vŭr, vŭri, a man.

But *sāl, sōl*, and *nīl* contracted from *nīhl*, are long.—(See note on Contraction.)

Pār, like, with its compounds, *compār, impār, dispār*, is long.

So are *fār, lār, Nār, fūr, cūr*, and *vēr, vēris*, the spring.

2. Monosyllables ending with any other letters are generally **LONG**: as,
dā, quī, tū, mē, stō, āc, Pān, ēs, thou eatest, from *edo*.—(Note 15.)
ōs, ōris, a mouth; *līs, lītis*, strife; and *crūs, crūris*, the shank.

But the enclitic conjunctions *quē, nē, vē*, joined to the ends of words, are short: as,

Unā Eurusaquē Notusquē ruunt.

Both *Eurus* and *Notus* together rush.—(Note 16.)

Ēs, thou art, from *sum*, with its compounds, as *obēs*, thou hinderest; *prodēs*, thou profitest; is short.

Nec, an, in; *os, ossis*, a bone; the nominative pronouns *is, quis*; and the adverb *bis*, twice, are all short.

The imperative *fāc*, suppose, the pronoun *hīc*, and its neuter *hōc*, in the nominative and accusative cases, are common.

ON WORDS OF GREEK DERIVATION.

In possessives and Greek derivatives a vowel before another may be long: as,

Lāertes, *Laertes*.—*Ānēia nutrix*, the nurse of *Aeneas*.

Greek vocatives in *a*, from nominatives in *as*, are short: as, *O Thomā!*

Greek datives and vocatives in *i*, whose genitive singular ends in *oc* short, are short in Latin: as the datives, *Minoidī, Palladī, Phyllidī*; the vocatives, *Alexī, Amaryllī, Daphnī*.

Words in *o*, which in Greek are written with an *ω*, of any case, are long: as,

Nom. *Sapphō, Didō*; Gen. *Androgeō, Apollō*; Acc. *Āthō, Apollō*.

Words in *e*, written in Greek with *η*, are long in Latin: as,

Lethē, Anchisē, Tempē.

Nouns in *on*, written in Greek with *o* short, of whatever case, are short in Latin: as,

Nom. *Iliōn*; Acc. *Caucasōn*.

Nouns in *er*, written in Greek with *η*, are long in Latin: as,

aēr, the air; *cratēr*, a large bowl.

But *patēr* and *matēr*, although written in Greek with *η*, are short in Latin.

Nominatives in *as*, making *os* short in the genitive, are short: as,

Arcūs and *Pallūs*; Gen. *Arcadōs, Palladōs*.

Accusatives in *as* of increasing nouns are short: as,

heroās, heroes, from *heros*; *Phyllidās*, from *Phyllis*.

Generally nouns spelt in Greek with the short letters *ε* or *ο*, retain in Latin the same quantity: as,

Cacoethēs, Naiadēs, Cyclopēs, Delēs, Palladēs.

Nouns in *is* are long, spelt in Greek with the diphthong *ει*: as,

Simois, from *Σιμοεις*; *Pyrois*, from *Πυροεις*.

In like manner nouns in *us*, coming from *ου* in Greek, are long: as,

Panthūs, from *Πανθους*; *Melampūs*, from *Μελαμπος*; *Cliūs*, from *Κλειους*.

Derivatives have generally the same quantity as their primitives, and compounds as their simple words : thus,

amator has the *ā* short, from *āmo*, to love.
perlēgo has the *lē* short, from *lēgo*, to read.
consolor has the *ō* long, from *solor*, to comfort.

The following, however, are to be excepted :—

Long Syllables from Short.

Cōmo, to dress } . from *cōma*, the hair.
hair, }
fōmes, fuel, }
fōmentum, a fomenta- } *fōveo*, to cherish.
tion, }
hūmanus, human, . . . *hōmo*, a man.
jūcundus, pleasant, . . . *jūvo*, to please.
jumentum, a beast of } *jūvo*, to help.
burthen, }
jūnior, younger, . . . *jūvenis*, young.
lāterna, a lantern, . . . *lāteo*, to lie hid.
lex lēgis, a law, . . . *lēgo*, to read.
mōbilis, moveable, . . . *mōveo*, to move.
nōnus, ninth, . . . *nōvem*, nine.
rex rēgis, a king, } . . *rēgo*, to rule.
rēgina, a queen, }
sēdes, a seat, . . . *sēdeo*, to sit.
tēgula, a tile, . . . *tēgo*, to cover.
trāgula, a drag-net . . . *trāho*, to draw.
vōmer, a plough-share, *vōmo*, to cast up.
vox vōcis, a voice, . . . *vōco*, to call.

Short Syllables from Long.

ārena, sand, }
ārista, a beard } from *āreo*, to be dry.
of corn, }
ārundo, a reed, }
āruspex, a soothsayer, *āra*, an altar.
dīcax, talkative, . . . *dīco*, to speak.
dīsertus, eloquent, . . . *dīssero*, to discourse.
dītio, power, . . . *dītis*, rich.
dux dūcis, . . . *dūco*, to lead.
fīdes, faith, . . . *fīo*, to be done.
frāgor, a crash, } . . *frāngo*, to break.
frāgilis, frail, }
lūcerna, a candle, . . . *lūceo*, to shine.
pōsui, I have put, . . . *pōno*, to put.
pōtui, I have been } *pōssum*, to be able.
able, }
sōpor, sleep, . . . *sōpio*, to lull.
dejēro pejēro, comp. } *jūro*, to swear.
of, }
innūba pronūba, . . . *nūbo*, to be married.
(Note 17.)

ON VERSES AND SCANNING.

A foot is a certain measure and number of syllables taken together *.

A verse is a certain number of feet disposed in a regulated order.

A foot of two long syllables is called a spondee : as, *virgīna*.

A foot of one long, followed by two short syllables, is called a dactyl : as, *scribēre*.

One long syllable, or two short ones, constitutes a half-foot.

The act of dividing a verse into the several feet of which it is composed is called scanning.

AN HEROIC OR HEXAMETER verse consists of six feet, of which the first four are either dactyls or spondees, the fifth a dactyl, and the sixth a spondee : as,

Tityre, tu patulæ recubans sub tegmine fagi.—VIRG.

Thou, O Tityrus, reclining beneath the shade of a wide-spreading beech-tree.

* For feet in general, see page 92.

The beginner will, in the above line, observe that *fagi* is the spondee in the sixth or last place, and *tygmíně* the dactyl in the fifth.

The vowel *u* in *sub* happening to come before the two consonants *s* and *t*, must be long by position, and therefore cannot be the last syllable of a dactyl. He will conclude, therefore, that the fourth foot is a spondee | *bāns sub* |.

Again, the vowel *e* in *Tityrě* being short (by the rule, *e* final is short), he will know that as it cannot be the first syllable of the second foot, it must belong to the first, which must be a dactyl, and that therefore the first foot is the dactyl *Tityrě*. With respect to the remaining syllables, *tu patula recu*, the previous rules will inform him that *tu* and the diphthong *æ* are long, and that the other vowels coming before single consonants, depend on usage or authority. But as only two feet remain to be made out of six syllables, he will conclude that they are both dactyls, viz. *tě pătü* | *læ rěcū* |. The whole line then will be thus scanned:

Tityrě | tū pătü | læ rěcū | bāns sub | tēgmíně | fāgī.

Sometimes a spondee is found in the fifth place: as,

5
Cara deūm soboles, magnum Jovis | incre | mentum !
Cara de | um sobo | les mag | num Jovis | incre | mentum !
Dear offspring of the gods, mighty progeny of Jupiter !

AN ELEGIAC OR PENTAMETER verse consists of two divisions, each containing five half-feet (and therefore called a penthemimer), of which the former contains two feet, dactyls or spondees, or one of each, followed by a long syllable; the latter, two dactyls only, and a long syllable: as,

Res est solliciti || plena timoris amor.—OVID.
Love is a thing full of anxious fear.

In this line the learner will remark that *res* and *est* being each long by foregoing rules, must form the first foot, a spondee: that *mor* being the long syllable of the second penthemimer, *plēnā* *tī* and *mōris* *ā*, must be the two dactyls of it. The syllable *tī* of *solliciti* must, therefore, be the long syllable of the first penthemimer, and consequently the remaining syllables *sollici*, must form a dactyl. He will therefore scan the line thus:

Rēs ēst | sollici | tī || plēnā tī | mōris ā | mōr.

The last syllable in every line is accounted common.

In the two examples given, there are no superfluous or deficient syllables; but as this is seldom the case, the following figures are to be observed in scanning: viz.—

SYNALŒPHA, ECTHLIPSIS, SYNÆRESIS, DIÆRESIS, & CÆSURA.

1. *Synalœpha* cuts off a vowel at the end of a word, when the next word begins with a vowel, as the *a* and *e* of *vita* and *vive* in the following line:

Sera nimis vita est crastina; vive hodiē.—MARTIAL.
To-morrow's life is too late—live to-day.

Scanned thus:

Sērā nī | mīs vīt' | ēst || crāstinā | vīv' hōdī | ē.

But *heu* and *ō* are never cut off.

2. *Ecthlipsis* cuts off *m* final with the preceding vowel, when the next word begins with a vowel, as the *um* from *monstrum* and *horrendum* in the line following:

Monstrum, horrendum, informe, ingens, cui lumen ademptum.—VIRG.
A monster horrible, mis-shapen, vast, from whom light (was) taken away.

Which is scanned thus (*h* being reckoned as no letter, and the *e* of *informe* cut off by synalœpha):

Mōnstr' hōr | rēnd' in | form' in | gēns cui | lūmēn ā | dēmp̄tum.

3. *Synæresis* contracts two syllables into one, as *ea* in *alvearia* are contracted into *a* in the following line :

Seu lento fuerint alvearia vimine texta.—VIRG.

Or whether the hives were woven of the pliant osier.

Scanned thus :

Seu len | tō fūē | rint al | vārīā | vimīnē | textā.

4. *Diaeresis* dissolves one syllable into two, as the syllable *vis* in *evolviase* into *uis* :

Debuerant fusos evolviase meos.—OVID.

They ought to have unwound my spindles.

Scanned thus :

Debue | rant fu | sos || evolu | isse me | oa.

5. *Cæsura* lengthens a short final syllable after a complete foot, as the syllable *bus* in *pectoribus* :

Pectoribus inhians spirantia consulit exta.—VIRG.

Intent upon the breasts (of the victims) she consults their panting entrails.

Pectori | bus inhi | ans spi | rantia | consulit | exta.

On other uses of this figure see Notes, page 91.

NOTES ON THE PROSODY.

Contraction is of two kinds, viz. by the figures *SYNÆRESIS* and *CRASIS*.

SYNÆRESIS is the union of two vowels, in which the sound of both is preserved : as, *aio*, *gaudeo*.

CRASIS runs two vowels into one, in which the sound of one is lost : as, *prōmo*, *prōmo*.

Every syllable formed by contraction is long : as,

cōgo, contracted from coago, or conago, to drive together.

nīl, nīhīl, nothing.

tībīcen, tībīlīcen, a musician, from *tibia* and *cano*.

1. When *postea* and *antea* are used short, they should be written separately : as, *post ea*, *ante ea*.

2. *Utique* and *utinam*, compounds of *uti*, have the *i* common ; *ibidem*, *ubique*, and *ubique*, from *ibi* and *ubi*, have the *i* long.

3. The ablative of the fifth declension is long by a similar contraction. Thus *fides*, *fidei*, would naturally make the ablative *fidēē*, which by contraction becomes *fidē*. So *dies*, *diei*, ablative *diēē*, is by contraction *diē* ; and *res*, *rei*, ablative *rēē*, by contraction *rē*. From these ablatives are derived the adverbs *hodie*, for *hoc diē* ; *quarē*, for *quā rē*, and the like.

4. The final *e* of the imperative of the second conjugation is long by contraction : for as *rego* makes *regē*, so *moneo* would make *monēē*, by contraction *monē*.

Vale, farewell, is sometimes short ; *cave*, beware, is seldom long : as,

Vade, *valē*, *cavē* ne titubēs, mandataque frangas.

Idque quod ignoti faciunt, *valē* dicere saltem.

5. Adjectives like *bonus* or *tener* are sometimes called adjectives of the second declension, because in them the form of the second declension prevails. Adverbs derived from them have the final *ē* long: as, *doctē*. *Tristis* is like the third declension; and adverbs derived from adjectives of this form end in *ē* or *ter*: as, *tristē*, *fortiter*.

6. *Ergō*, when used for *causā*, as *virtutis ergō*, for the sake of virtue, is long, being then used as an oblique case, and adopted from *εργον*.

7. The short finals *b*, *d*, *t*, *l*, *r*, *is*, and *us*, are supposed in the rule to be preceded by a single vowel. If a diphthong or another consonant go before, the syllable will be long by nature: as, *abēst*, *aut*, *haud*. It will be long by position, as was noticed before, if the following word begins with a consonant.

8. *Pallās*, making *Pallantis*, is long: *Pallās*, *Palladis*, is short.

9. *Us* in the genitive singular, and in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural of the fourth declension, is long by contraction. Thus, nom. *manūs*, gen. *manūis*, by contraction *manūs*. Plural nominative, accusative, and vocative, *manues*, by contraction *manūs*.

QUANTITY OF FIRST AND MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

10. A vowel before a double consonant is naturally long, because these consonants, *j*, *x*, *z*, are respectively equivalent to two, *dg*, *cs*, and *ds* or *ts*. But compounds of *jugum* form an exception: as, *bijugus*, *quadrijugus*, &c., having the vowel short before *j*.

11. A short vowel, when it happens to come between a mute and a liquid, is between short and long; being neither so short as it was originally, nor so long as it would be before two mutes, or a liquid followed by a mute. The learner will instantly perceive that the word *pater* is said more quickly than *patris*, and *patris* more quickly than either *partis* or *pastis*: i. e. the vowel *a* is shortest in *pater*; and in *patris* shorter than in *partis* or *pastis*—shorter before *tr* than before *rt* or *st*. This arises from the nature of the liquid letters, which are so called from their smooth and easy flow in pronunciation. Hence a short vowel, when by inflexion or derivation it comes before a mute followed by a liquid, is rendered common. If a vowel be originally long, instead of becoming common by the addition of the liquid, its utterance is still more retarded: as from *arāre*, *arātus*, comes *arātrum*, a plough; from *salūtis*, *salūber*, *salūbris*. This rule requires that both the mute and the liquid be in the same syllable; if they are not, the vowel is long, as in *ābripit*, *ābrasit*.

12. A vowel before another in the same word is naturally short, being capable of a very quick articulation, as appears on removing the consonants from any word: as, *decus*, *deus*.

13. The genitive *alius* has the *i* long by a contraction for *aliius*. As *unus* makes genitive *unius*, so *alius* would make *aliius*. The quantity of the genitives *alterius* and *alius* is easily remembered by the hexameter:

Corripit alterius, semper producit alius.

14. A diphthong is long, as being the contraction of two vowels into one syllable : as, *Maesthūs*, *Maesthous*.

15. The monosyllable *zē*, from *edo*, is a crasis for *eis*, which is a syncope for *edis* : *edis*, *eis*, *es*, and is therefore long.

16. The conjunctions *que*, *ne*, *ve*, are called enclitics, because they incline or draw towards them the accent of the word to which they are united, as *mentem*, *mentēm-que*; *feceris*, *fecerisne* : and they are short, because being always joined to some other word, they form, as far as relates to the sound, the last syllable of that word, and are included in the rule for *e* final.

Nē, *do not*, or *lest*, is long.

17. Many apparently irregular derivatives may be accounted for by contraction : as, *jūnior* from *jūcōnior*, *nōnus* from *nōcōnus*, *bigae* from *bijūgae*, *trigae* from *trijūgae*, *bōbus* or *būbus* from *bovibus*, according as the *o* or *e* is struck out.

ON PARTICLES USED IN COMPOSITION.

18. The particles *a*, *e*, *de*, *ex*, *di*, prefixed to words in composition, are long : as, *amitto*, *dēduco*, *ērumpe*, *diripio*, *sēduco* ; except *disertus*.

The particle *re* is short, except in the impersonal *rēfert*, where perhaps it is derived from the ablative *re* :

Pluribus ille *rēfert*, quae non cognoscere *rēfert*.
He relates to many what things it concerns them not to know.

Sometimes the first consonant of the next word is doubled in order to make *re* long, as in *relligio*, *retulit* ; but this is rare, and never done when it would be inharmonious, as it would be in *revoleo*, nor when the consonant does not properly belong to the root, as in *redeo*, *redoleo*.

Pro is generally long in composition : as, *prōduco*, *prōfero* ; but it is short in these words—*prōfiteor*, *prōterous*, *prōfitecor*, *prōcella*, *prōcus*, *prōfanus*, *prōfecto*, *prōfundus*, *prōnepos*, *prōfari*, and in those instances where it represents the Greek *προ*, ante, as *prōpheta*.

In the following words it is doubtful : *propello*, *propulso*, *procurro*, *propago*, *procumbo*, *profundo*.

Supines in *itum* are long from perfects in *iei*, and short from any other, without regard to the conjugation : as, *quæsiui quæsitum*, *petiui petitum*, *audiui auditum* ; *vetui vetitum*, *agnovi agnitum*, *monui monitum*.

Upon the figure Cæsura the flow of the verse depends, as appears from a line without any Cæsuras : as,

Urbem | fortam | nuper | cepit | fortior | hostis.

The Cæsura may be in four places, viz. in the 3rd, 5th, 7th, and 9th half-foot, and has the name accordingly of the trihemimeral, penthemimeral, hepthemimeral, or ennehemimeral cæsura, as in the following examples :

Sylvestrem tenui musam meditaris avenâ.—3rd, 5th, 7th.
Ille latus niveum molli fultus hyacintho.—3rd, 5th, 7th, 9th.

It is sometimes found in the eleventh half-foot : as,

Vertitur interea cælum et ruit Oceano nox.
Sternitur exanimusque tremens procumbit humi bos.

The Cæsura is best after the second foot : as,

Arma virumque cano, Trojæ qui primus ab oris.

Otherwise after the first and third foot : as,

Ille meas errare boves, ut cernis, et ipsum.

It is inharmonious if *deferred* till after the third foot : as,

Et jam cætera, mortales quæ suadet adire.

The penthemimeral Cæsura is admired, when there is after it a pause in the sense or in the flow of the verse : as,

Stat sua cuique dies : breve et irreparabile tempus.
Nos patriæ fines, et dulcia linquimus arva.

The figure Cæsura has the power of lengthening a short final syllable, as in the following examples :

Pectoribus inhians spirantia consulit exta.	the <i>trihemimeral</i> .
Omnia vincit amor et nos cedamus amori.	the <i>penthemimeral</i> .
Dona dehinc auro gravis sectoque elephanto.	the <i>hepthemimeral</i> .
Gravius homo infectos linquens profugus Hymenæos.	the <i>ennehemimeral</i> .

To the figures used in scanning may be added Systole, which shortens a long syllable : as,

Obstupui steteruntque comæ, vox faucibus hæsit,

and Diastole, which lengthens a short one : as,

Et quas Præmides in aquosæ vallibus Idæ.

It may here be remarked, that the idea of a light and rapid motion is conveyed in a line of continuous dactyls : as,

Quadrupedumque putrem sonitu quatit ungula campum,—VIRG.

which imitates the galloping of a horse.

The idea of a heavy, slow, and difficult motion, is conveyed by a line of many spondees : as,

Illi inter sese magnâ vi brachia tollunt,—VIRG.

which is descriptive of the heavy, laborious work of the smith.

The swift flight of a pigeon is represented in the following line :

Mox aere lapsa quieto
Radit iter liquidum, celeres neque commovet alas.—VIRG.

OF FEET IN GENERAL.

Besides the dactyl and spondee, which are the only feet used in heroic and elegiac verse, there are many other feet, or combinations of two, three, and four syllables, used in lyric poetry, as exhibited in the following table.

Combinations of Two Syllables.

Pyrrhic	˘ ˘	děšs	Spondee	- -	vīrgās
Iambus	˘ -	děos	Trochee	- ˘	vīrgā

Combinations of Three Syllables.

Tribrach . . .	˘ ˘ ˘	špěřiš	Molossus . . .	- - -	grāndāevōs
Anapest	˘ ˘ -	děmīnōs	Dactyl	- ˘ ˘	scriběřě
Amphibrach . .	˘ - ˘	šrātōr	Cretic	- ˘ -	cāndīdōs
Bacchius . . .	˘ - -	šrāndī	Antibacchius .	- - ˘	grāndāevūs

Combinations of Four Syllables.

Proceleusmatic	˘ ˘ ˘ ˘	hōmīnībūs	Dispondæus .	- - - -	cōntēndēbānt
	Or two pyrrh.			Or two spond.	
Diiambus . . .	˘ - - -	šrāvěřīnt	Ditrochæus . .	- ˘ - ˘	cōndītōřě
	Two iambs.			Two trochees.	
Antispastus . .	˘ - - ˘	šrātōřě	Choriambus . .	- ˘ ˘ -	pěrdīděřīnt
	Iamb-trochee.			Troch.-iamb.	
Major Ionic . .	- - ˘ ˘	aūdivěřīt	Minor Ionic . .	˘ ˘ - -	cēcīnīssēnt
	Spondee-pyrrh.			Pyrrh.-spond.	
1st Pæon . . .	- ˘ ˘ ˘	vūlněřībūs	2nd Pæon . . .	˘ - ˘ ˘	pěpěnděřīt
	Trochee-pyrrh.			Iamb-pyrrhic.	
3rd Pæon . . .	˘ ˘ - ˘	rěgěřětūr	4th Pæon . . .	˘ ˘ ˘ -	cēcīděřānt
	Pyrrh.-trochee.			Pyrrh.-iamb.	
1st Epitrite . .	˘ - - -	šmāvīssēnt	2nd Epitrite . .	- ˘ - -	cōndītōřēs
	Iamb-spond.			Troch.-spond.	
3rd Epitrite . .	- - ˘ ˘	laūdābīlēs	4th Epitrite . .	- - - ˘	cōndūxīssě
	Spond.-iamb.			Spond.-troch.	

GRAMMATICAL AND RHETORICAL FIGURES.

Under the general name *Metaplasmus* or *Transformation*, are comprehended eight figures—viz. three for the addition of a letter or syllable, three for the removal, and two for the change or transposition : thus,

Prosthesis, from *προς* and *τιθημι*, prefixes a letter or syllable to a word : as,
gnavus for navus—tetuli for tuli.

Epenthesis, from *ἐπι*, *εν*, and *τιθημι*, inserts into the middle : as,
relligio for religio—repperit for reperit—induperator for imperator.

Paragoge, from *παρα* and *αγω*, adds to the end : as,
dicier for dici.

To these figures correspond *Aphæresis*, *Syncope*, and *Apocope*.

Aphæresis, from *απο* and *αιρω*, which takes from the beginning of a word : as,
'st for est—conia for ciconia.

Syncope, from *συν* and *κοπτω*, which takes from the middle : as,
dixti for dixisti—virum for virorum.

Apocope, from *απο* and *κοπτω*, which takes from the end : as,
tun' for tune—vidén' for videsne.

Metathesis, from *μετα* and *τιθημι*, transposes letters : as,
pistris for pristis.

Antithesis, from *αντι* and *τιθημι*, substitutes one letter for another : as,
olli for illi—optumus for optimus.

We may here subjoin the figure *Archaismus* (from *αρχαιος*), or the *ancient* manner of writing : as, pictaī for pictæ—duim for dem—curru for currui—siem for sim ; according to which figure also *totus*, *nullus*, and *solus*, would be declined like *bonus*.

There are four general figures in Syntax, viz. ELLIPSIS, PLEONASMUS, SYLLEPSIS, and HYPERBATON.

Ellipsis, from *εν* and *λειπω*, omits words necessary to the grammatical construction.

Pleonasmus, from *πλεων*, admits unnecessary words.

Syllepsis, from *συν* and *λαμβάνω*, accounts for the construction from the sense rather than from the words made use of.

Hyperbaton, from *υπερ* and *βαινω*, admits a long parenthesis, or inverts the natural order of words.

ELLIPSIS.

Ellipsis is observable in a great many rules of Syntax : for instance,

1. Omission of the verb *as* in apposition : *as*,
Urbs Roma *for* quæ est Roma.
2. Omission of the nominative : *as*,
aiunt *for* homines aiunt—vivitur *for* vita vivitur—peccatur *for* peccatum
peccatur—pluit *for* cœlum pluit, and the like.
3. The accusative after the verb : *as*,
currit *for* currit cursum : reperias qui Romam proficiscantur—*sub*. homines.
4. The verb before the infinitive : *as*,
spargere voces *for* cœpit spargere voces.
5. The antecedent substantive : *as*,
non est quòd gratias agas—negotium understood.
6. The consequent substantive : *as*,
est pater quem amo *for* quem patrem.
7. The substantive of a neuter adjective governing a genitive : *as*,
paululum pecuniæ—negotium understood : amara curarum—negotia under-
stood.
8. Words governing the accusative : *as*,
Me miserum ! sentio understood.
Under this head may be classed the figure
Asyndeton, from α and $\sigma\upsilon\nu\delta\epsilon\iota\omega$, which omits conjunctions : *as*,
ferre citi ferrum, date tela, scandite muros.

PLEONASMUS.

To this figure belong expressions like these :—*omnia quæcumque*—*nihil quicquam*—*ore locuta est*. Also the figures

Polysyndeton, from $\pi\omicron\lambda\upsilon\varsigma$ and $\sigma\upsilon\nu\delta\epsilon\iota\omega$, which uses many conjunctions : *as*,

Una Eurusque Notusque ruunt creberque procellis Africus.

Periphrasis, from $\pi\epsilon\rho\iota$ and $\phi\omicron\rho\alpha\zeta\omega$, which expresses a single idea in many words : *as*,

teneri fœtus ovium *for* agni.

Hendiadys, from $\epsilon\nu$, $\delta\iota\alpha$, and $\delta\upsilon\omega$, which expresses one thing as two : *as*,

pateris libanus *et* auro, *for* aureis pateris.

SYLLEPSIS.

In gender—

Samnitiū duo millia cœsi—duo millia crucibus affixi—ubi est socius, qui me perdidit.—That compound of wickedness, who has ruined me.

In number—

Aperite aliquis ostium.—Open ye (*i. e.* one of you) the door.

HYPERBATON

Includes five species—*ANASTROPHÊ*, *THERIS*, *PARENTHESIS*, *SYNCHYSIS*, and *ANACOLUTHON*.

1. *Anastrophe*, from *ανα* and *στροφω*, or inversion : as,
mecom for cum me.
2. *Tmesis*, from *τεμνω*, separates the parts of a compounded word : as,
septem subjecta Triomi for Septemtrioni.
3. *Parenthesis*, from *παρα*, *εν*, and *τιθημι*, interrupts by the insertion of an explanatory sentence : as,
Tityre dum redeo (*brevis est via*) pasce capellas.
4. *Synchysis*, from *συγχω*, confounds the natural construction : as,
Saxa vocant Itali mediis quæ in fluctibus, aras.—VIRG.
5. *Anacolouthon*, from *α* and *ακολουθεω*, when the latter part of the construction will not naturally follow the former : as,
Nos omnes, quibus est aliquis alicundè objectus labor, omne quod est interea tempus, priusquam id rescitum est, lucro est.—TER. HECYRA.

Where the nominative *nos omnes* should have been followed by *lucro habemus*; or *lucro est* have been preceded by the dative *nobis omnibus*.

Such misconstructions, however, are not to be defended under the specious name of a rhetorical or grammatical figure, but rather are to be regarded as inadvertencies of the author.

The same remark may be made of the figures Antiptosis and Enallage, by which genders, numbers, moods, persons, and tenses, may be changed for one another.

RHETORICAL TROPES OR FIGURES.

A Trope (derived from *τροπω*, to turn) is the *turning* or applying of a word from its natural and proper meaning to another which resembles it in the subject under consideration.

The six following figures are in most general use : Metaphor, Allegory, Metonymy, Synecdoche, Irony, Hyperbole.

1. *Metaphor*, from *μεταφω*, to transfer, is the substituting for a word another *transferred* from any object in nature, which resembles it in the application : as,

Classi immittit habenas (from a chariot).—He gives the reins to the fleet.

Remigio alarum utitur (from a boat).—It uses the rowing of wings.

Montes sylvæque loquuntur (from man).—The mountains and woods *speak*.

Duo fulmina belli.—The two thunderbolts of war—The Scipios.

Læta seges.—A joyful harvest.

The Lord is my rock and my fortress. Ps. xviii. 2.

I am the vine, ye are the branches. John xv. 5.

2. *Allegory*, from *αλλο*, other, and *αγορευω*, to *speak openly*, the *speaking* other than is meant—the conveying our meaning under a *continuation of metaphors*: as,

Claudite jam rivos, pueri, sat prata biberunt.—Stop the streams, boys, the meads have drunk enough.

Parables, fables, and the like, belong to this figure.

3. *Metonymy*, from *μετα* and *ονομα*, puts name for name, the Cause for the Effect, the antecedent for consequent idea, and *vice versâ*: as,

Musam meditaris avenâ—for *fistulâ*. The reed for the instrument.

Aris imponere *honorem*—for the sacrifice itself.

Proximus ardet *Ucalegon*—Ucalegon for his house.

Ab *Annibale* cæsa sunt sexaginta millia hominum—Annibal for his army.

Cedant arma *togæ*—for war and peace.

Neque audit currus *habenas*—hears for obeys.

Pleno se proluit *auro*—gold for the vessel made of it.

Ferroque accingitur—iron for the sword made of it.

So Pinus—the wood for the ship.

Æs, argentum, aurum—gold, silver, copper, for money.

Pallida mors, ira cæca—effect for cause. Death makes pale, anger blind.

Bibet Germania Tigrim—the place for the inhabitants.

As oft as ye drink this *cup* (1 Cor. xi. 26)—the thing containing for the thing contained.

4. *Synecdoche*, *συν, εκδεχομαι*, comprehendo. The speaking *comprehensively*—putting a Part for the Whole, and *vice versâ*.

Armato milite complent for militibus—one soldier for many.

Mucro for Gladius—the point for the whole sword.

Tectum for Domus—the roof for the house.

Auster for Ventus—a particular wind for the wind generally.

Carina, puppis, &c. for navis—parts of the ship for the whole.

Ten sail of the line.

Xanthum bibissent—the whole river for the part.

5. *Irony*, *ειρωνεια*, dissimulation, the pretending to praise when we blame, and the contrary.

O salve, bone vir, curâsti probè.—TER. Good sir, thou hast excellently provided.

Hic ego, vehemens ille consul.—CIC. I, that impetuous consul.

They mocked him, saying, Hail ! King of the Jews ! Matt. xxvii. 29.

6. *Hyperbole*, *υπερ, βαλλω*, overshooting the truth.

Plumâ levior—Pice nigrior—Talpâ cæcior.

Dum comuntur, annus est.—TER. They take a year to adorn themselves.

Ipsæ (gigas) arduus, altaque pulsât sidera.—VIRG. Himself so tall, he touches the high stars.

The figures which follow are of less frequent occurrence, but necessary to be well understood.

Antonomasia (which is a species of Metonymy), from *αντι ονομα*, substitutes a common and a proper name for each other : as,

Davus ego, non Œdipus.—I am Davus, not Œdipus ; not a riddle-teller.

Sardanapalus.—A Sardanapalus, for a licentious person.

Nero for crudelissimus.—A Nero, for a very cruel person.

Croesus for dives.—A Croesus, for one very rich.

Omnipotens for Deus.

Orator—The orator—(Cicero being meant).

Irus et est subitò, qui modò Croesus erat.—OVID. He is suddenly an Irus, who just now was a Croesus.

Litotes, from *λιτος*, tenuis, by a slight denial asserts a thing more strongly : as,

Non laudo—I exceedingly condemn.—TER.

Munera nec sperno—I gladly accept.—VIRG.

Est qui nec veteris pocula Massici spernit.—HOR.—i. e. greatly loves.

Climax, from *κλιμαξ*, a ladder, is when the force of words increases by *steps* or *gradation*.

In urbe luxuries creatur ; ex luxuriâ existat avaritia necesse est ; ex avaritiâ erumpat audacia ; inde omnia scelera ac maleficia nascuntur.—CIC. PRO ROSC.

Here the steps of the climax are luxury, avarice, audacity, and all manner of crimes.

Quæ reliqua spes libertatis manet, si illis quod *libet*, *licet*, et quod licet, *possunt* ; et quod possunt *audent*, et quod audent, *faciunt*.—CIC.

Here the steps are the wish, the sufferance, the power, the daring, the actual deed and perpetration.

Facinus est vincire civem Romanum, scelus verberare, propè parricidium necare.

The Steps—binding, beating, killing—a bad deed, a wickedness, parricide, or the highest degree of guilt.

See Rom. v. 3—5 ; Matt. x. 40.

Antithesis, *αντι* and *τιθημι*, a contrasting of opposite ideas.

Hujus orationis difficilior est exitum, quam principium invenire.

Obsequium amicos, veritas odium parit.

Flectere si nequeo Superos, Acheronta movebo.—VIRG.

Thou that teachest *another*, teachest thou not *thyself*? &c. &c. Rom. ii. 21.

Synonymia, *συν* and *ονομα*, the repetition of the same idea in different words : as,

Quem si fata virum servant, si vescitur aurâ

Ætheredâ, nec adhuc crudelibus occubat umbris.—VIRG.

Paralipsis, παρα and λειπω, the affecting to *pass over* circumstances of crimination, or obliquely noticing a charge under pretence of passing it over : as,

Nonne etiam alio incredibili scelere hoc scelus cumulasti quod ego prætermitto, et facile patior sileri, &c.

Nec ea dico, quæ si dicam, tamen infirmari non possis.—CIC.

If he oweth thee aught, I will repay it ; *albeit I do not say to thee*, how thou owest unto me even thine own self besides.—EPIST. TO PHILEMON, 19.

Epanorthosis, επι ανορθω, correctio, recalls a word or expression for the purpose of substituting one more forcible or correct.

Filium unicum adolescentulum habeo : ah ! quid dixi ! me habere ! Imo habui, Chreme ; nunc habeam, necne incertum est. TER.—*I have* an only son—‘*have*,’ did I say ! *I had*, indeed, Chremes : now, whether I have or not, is doubtful.

Believest thou, King Agrippa !—*I know* that thou believest.—ACTS xvi.

I have laboured more abundantly than they all ; yet *not I*, but the grace of God, which was with me.—1 COR. xv. 10.

Apopsiopsis, απο σιωπω, the breaking off suddenly in anger, grief, or some other violent passion : as,

Quos ego—sed præstat motos componere fluctus.—VIRG.

Quem quidem ego si sensero—sed quid opus est verbis !—TER.

See Luke xix. 42 ; John xii. 27.

Apostrophe, απο and στρέφω, a turning aside to address some new person or thing, either present or absent : as,

Jam, jam, frater animo meo carissime, quanquam tibi immaturo, et undè minimè decuit, vita erepta sit, letandum magis quam dolendum puto casum tuum.—*Atherbal*, addressing the Roman senate, apostrophises his murdered brother *Hiempsal*.—SALL.

Fas omne abruptit, Polydorum obruncat et auro

Vi potitur—*Quid non mortalia pectora cogis*

Auri sacra fames !—VIRG. The speaker apostrophises avarice.

See Matt. xxiii. 37.

Prosopopæia or *Personification*, προσωπον and ποιω, the imagining of a person, and speaking of inanimate things as if they were animated : as,

Quæ patria tecum, Catilina, sic agit, et quodammodo tacita loquitur ; “nulum jam tot annos facinus extitit, nisi per te.”—CIC.

Which country thus remonstrates with thee, Catiline, and in a manner silently speaks, saying, “No foul deed has happened these many years, but through thee,” &c.

Hæne mihi fructus, hunc fertilitatis honorem
Officiique refert !

Is this the fruit, this the reward you return for my fertility and duty !—*The Complaint of the Earth to Jupiter against Phaeton*.—OVID.

Behold, this *stone* shall be a *witness* ; it hath heard all. JOSHUA xxiv. 27.

See Jotham’s parable of the trees, Judges ix. 8.

Oxymoron, from *οξύς* and *μωρος*, a seeming contradiction, the association of contradictory terms : as,

Concordia discors.—A discordant concord.

Cum tacent, clamant.—While they are silent, they exclaim.

The three following figures relate to sound only.

Onomatopœia, *ονομα* and *ποιεω*, an imitation of the sound signified in the word itself : as,

Grunnio—clangor—murmur—squeak—crash.

Paronomasia, play on words of like sound : as,

Amor et melle et felle est fecundissimus.

Parechesis, or alliteration, *παπα* and *ηχηω*, sounding alike, the close recurrence of the same letter : as,

Neu patriæ validas in viscera vertite vires (the letter *v* recurring).

FINIS.

39, PATERNOSTER ROW,
FEBRUARY 1, 1844.

A Select Catalogue of
BOOKS ON EDUCATION,
IN ALL BRANCHES OF KNOWLEDGE,
PRINTED FOR
LONGMAN, BROWN, GREEN, AND LONGMANS.

MESSRS. LONGMAN AND Co. have recently published the following important NEW SCHOOL BOOKS:—

The Universal Class-Book: a New Series of Reading

Lessons (original and selected) for Every Day in the Year: each Lesson recording some important Event in General History, Biography, &c. which happened on the day of the month under which it is placed; or detailing, in familiar language, interesting facts in Science; also, a variety of Descriptive and Narrative Pieces, interspersed with Poetical Gleanings: Questions for Examination being appended to each day's Lesson, and the whole carefully adapted to practical Tuition. By Samuel Maunder, Author of "The Treasury of Knowledge," &c. 12mo. 6s. bd.

First Steps to Latin Writing: intended as a Practical

Illustration of the Latin Accidence. To which are added, Examples on the principal Rules of Syntax. By G. F. Graham, Author of "English, or the Art of Composition," and "Helps to English Grammar." 2d Edition, considerably enlarged and improved, 12mo. 4s. cloth.

"The utility of Mr. Graham's 'First Steps' consists in the simplicity and care with which it reiterates the forms of Grammar: its direct advantage will consist in the grammatical knowledge it must impart; its indirect, in furnishing the pupil with an ample vocabulary."—SPECTATOR.

An Elementary Grammar of the Greek Language.

By Dr. Raphael Kühner, Co-Rector of the Lyceum at Hanover. Translated by J. H. Millard, St. John's College, Cambridge; late Second Classical Master at Mill Hill Grammar School. 8vo. 9s. cloth.

"To those who would learn or teach Greek logically, systematically, and thoroughly, Dr. Kühner's 'Elementary Grammar' will be advantageous, if not indispensable. Its peculiar features are propriety of arrangement and copiousness of illustration, both in declension and conjugation, as well as in the rules of Syntax, which last is celebrated for perspicuity and completeness. The stem of nouns and verbs is also distinguished throughout from the inflectional parts."—SPECTATOR.

Lempriere's Classical Dictionary, abridged for Public

and Private Schools of both Sexes. By the late E. H. Barker, Trinity College, Cambridge. A New Edition, revised and corrected throughout. By J. Cauvin, M.A. and Ph. D. of the University of Göttingen; Assistant-Editor of "Brande's Dictionary of Science, Literature, and Art." 8vo. 12s. bound.

"This is the only edition containing all the most recent improvements and additions of Professor Anthon, and other eminent scholars; and it is hoped that it will be distinguished from all other editions of Lempriere, which, though larger in size, contain a vast quantity of matter not calculated to assist the scholar, and which has been purposely expunged from this edition; thus diminishing the expense of the work, without injuring its utility as an elementary school-book. All indelicacies, both in matter and language, have been carefully avoided.

Hamel's French Grammar and Exercises. A New

Edition, in one volume. Carefully corrected, greatly improved, enlarged, and arranged in conformity with the last edition (1835) of the Dictionary of the French Academy, and in conformity with the last edition of the French Grammar of the University of France. By N. Lambert. 12mo.—Just ready.

Elementary Greek Works, Lexicons, Grammars, &c.

Kühner's Elementary Greek Grammar. [Vide page 1.]

Brasse's Greek Gradus.

A Greek Gradus; or, a Greek, Latin, and English Prosodial Lexicon: containing the Interpretation, in Latin and English, of all words which occur in the Greek Poets, from the Earliest Period to the time of Ptolemy Philadelphus: with the Quantity of the Syllables verified by Authorities; and combining the advantages of a Lexicon of the Greek Poets and a Greek Gradus. For the use of Schools and Colleges. By the late Rev. Dr. BRASSE. To which is added, a Synopsis of the Greek Metres, by the Rev. J. R. Major, D.D. Head Master of King's College School, London. 2d Edition, revised and corrected by the Rev. F. E. J. Valpy, M.A. Head Master of Burton-on-Trent Grammar School. 8vo. 15s. cloth.

Giles's Greek and English Lexicon.

A Lexicon of the Greek Language, for the use of Colleges and Schools; containing —1. A Greek-English Lexicon, combining the advantages of an Alphabetical and Derivative Arrangement; 2. An English-Greek Lexicon, more copious than any that has ever yet appeared. To which is prefixed, a concise Grammar of the Greek Language. By the Rev. J. A. GILES, LL.D. late Fellow of C. C. College, Oxon. 2d Edit. with corrections, 1 thick vol. 8vo. 21s. cloth.
. The English-Greek Part separately. 7s. 6d. cloth.

"In two points it excels every other Lexicon of the kind; namely, in the English-Greek part, and in the Classification of Greek Derivatives under their primitives."—MOODY'S ETON GREEK GRAMMAR.

Junius on the Greek Verb.

A Treatise on the Greek Verb, with reference to the Evolution of it from primary Elements, the Causes of its Amplification, and the proper Power of its various Forms. By LUCIUS JUNIUS. 8vo. 9s. cloth.

Greek Grammar Practice.

In Three Parts: 1. Lessons in Vocabulary, Nouns, Adjectives, and Verbs in Grammatical order; 2. Greek, made out of each column for translation; 3. English of the same for retranslation. By the Rev. JAMES FENIMORE, B.A. Trinity College, Oxford.—In the press.

Moody's Eton Greek Grammar in English.

The New Eton Greek Grammar, with the Marks of Accent, and the Quantity of the Penult: containing the Eton Greek Grammar in English; the Syntax and Prosody as used at Eton; also, the Analogy between the Greek and Latin Languages; Introductory Essays and Lessons: with numerous Additions to the text. The whole being accompanied by Practical and Philosophical Notes. By CLEMENT MOODY, of Magdalene Hall, Oxford; and Editor of the Eton Latin Grammar in English. 2d Edition, carefully revised, &c. 12mo. 4s. cloth.

Valpy's Greek Grammar.

The Elements of Greek Grammar: with Notes. By R. VALPY, D.D. late Master of Reading School. New Edition, 8vo. 6s. 6d. boards; bound, 7s. 6d.

Valpy's Greek Delectus, and Key.

Delectus Sententiarum Græcarum, ad usum Tironum accommodatus: cum Notulis et Lexico. Auctore R. VALPY, D.D. Editio Nova, eademque aucta et emendata, 12mo 4s. cloth.

KEY to the above, being a Literal Translation into English, 12mo. 2s. 6d. sewed.

Valpy's Second Greek Delectus.

Second Greek Delectus; or, New Analecta Minora: intended to be read in Schools between Dr. Valpy's Greek Delectus and the Third Greek Delectus: with English Notes, and a copious Greek and English Lexicon. By the Rev. F. E. J. VALPY, M.A. Head Master of the Free Grammar School of Burton-on-Trent. 3d Edition, 8vo. 9s. 6d. bound.

The Extracts are taken from the following Writers:—

Hierocles	Ælian	Sophocles	Homer
Æsop	The Septuagint	Æschylus	Tyrtæus
Palephatus	St. Matthew	Aristophanes	Blon; Mœchus
Plutarch	Xenophon	Hærodotus	Erycius of Cyricum
Polysenus	Euripides	Anacreon	Archytas.

*Greek Works—continued.***Valpy's Third Greek Delectus.**

The Third Greek Delectus; or, New Analecta Majora: with English Notes. In Two Parts. By the Rev. F. E. J. VALPY, M.A. Head Master of the Free Grammar School, Burton-on-Trent. 8vo 15s. 6d. bound.

*. The Parts may be had separately.

PART I. PROSE. 8vo. 8s. 6d. bound.—The Extracts are taken from

Herodotus	Isocrates	Demosthenes	Thucydides
Xenophon	Plato	Lysias	Longinus
	Theophrastus.		

" 2. POETRY. 8vo. 9s. 6d. bound.

Homer	Callimachus	Simonides	Euripides
Hesiod	Erinna	Sappho	Sophocles
Apollonius Rhodius	Bacchylides	Theocritus	Æschylus
Pythagoras	Callistratus	Pindar	Aristophanes.
Cleantes			

Valpy's Greek Exercises, and Key.

Greek Exercises; being an Introduction to Greek Composition, leading the student from the Elements of Grammar to the higher parts of Syntax, and referring the Greek of the words to a Lexicon at the end: with Specimens of the Greek Dialects, and the Critical Canons of Dawes and Porson. 4th Edition, with many Additions and Corrections. By the Rev. F. E. J. VALPY, M.A. Master of Burton-on-Trent Grammar School. 12mo. 6s. 6d. cloth.

KEY, 12mo. 3s. 6d. sewed.

Neilson's Greek Exercises, and Key.

Greek Exercises, in Syntax, Ellipse, Dialects, Prosody, and Metaphrasis. To which is prefixed, a concise but comprehensive Syntax; with Observations on some Idioms of the Greek Language. By the Rev. W. NEILSON, D.D. New Edition, 8vo. 5s. boards.

KEY, 3s. boards.

Howard's Greek Vocabulary.

A Vocabulary, English and Greek; arranged systematically, to advance the learner in Scientific as well as Verbal Knowledge: with a List of Greek and Latin Affinities, and of Hebrew, Greek, Latin, English, and other Affinities. By NATHANIEL HOWARD. New Edition, corrected, 18mo. 3s. cloth.

Howard's Introductory Greek Exercises, and Key.

Introductory Greek Exercises to those of Huntingford, Dunbar, Neilson, and others; arranged under Models, to assist the learner: with Exercises on the different Tenses of Verbs, extracted from the Table or Picture of Cebes. By NATHANIEL HOWARD. New Edition, with considerable improvements, 12mo. 5s. 6d. cloth.

KEY, 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

Dr. Major's Greek Vocabulary.

Greek Vocabulary; or, Exercises on the Declinable Parts of Speech. By the Rev. J. R. MAJOR, D.D. Head Master of the King's College School, London. 2d Edition, corrected and enlarged, 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

Evans's Greek Copy-Book.

Γραφεὺς Δορυᾶ; sive, Calamus Scriptorius: Copies for Writing Greek in Schools. By A. B. EVANS, D.D. Head Master of Market-Bosworth Free Grammar School. 4to. 5s. cloth.

The use of one Copy-Book is sufficient for securing a firm and clear Greek hand.

Dr. Major's Guide to the Greek Tragedians.

A Guide to the Reading of the Greek Tragedians; being a series of articles on the Greek Drama, Greek Metres, and Canons of Criticism. Collected and arranged by the Rev. J. R. MAJOR, D.D. Head Master of King's College School, London. 2d Edition, enlarged, 8vo. 9s. cloth.

*. In this second edition the work has undergone a careful revision, and many important additions and improvements have been made.

Seager's Edition of Bos on the Ellipsis.

Bos on the Greek Ellipsis. Abridged and translated into English, from Professor Schaeffer's Edition, with Notes, by the Rev. J. SEAGER, B.A. 8vo. 9s. 6d. bds.

Seager's Hermann's Greek Metres.

Hermann's Elements of the Doctrine of Metres. Abridged and translated into English, by the Rev. JOHN SEAGER, B.A. 8vo. 5s. 6d. bds.

Seager's Hoozeveen on Greek Particles.

Hoozeveen on the Greek Particles. Abridged and translated into English, by the Rev. JOHN SEAGER, B.A. 8vo. 7s. 6d. boards.

Seager's Maillaire on the Greek Dialects.

Maillaire on the Greek Dialects. Abridged and Translated into English, from the Edition of Starzins, by the Rev. JOHN SEAGER, B.A. 8vo. 9s. 6d. boards.

Seager's Viger's Greek Idioms.

Viger on the Greek Idioms. Abridged and translated into English, from Professor Hermann's last Edition, with Original Notes, by the Rev. JOHN SEAGER, B.A. 2d Edition, with Additions and Corrections, 8vo. 9s. 6d. boards.

* * The above Five Works may be had in 2 vols. 8vo. £2. 2s. cloth lettered.

Elementary Latin Works, Dictionaries, Grammars, &c.**Riddle's Latin Dictionary.**

A Complete Latin-English and English-Latin Dictionary; compiled from the best sources, chiefly German. By the Rev. J. E. RIDDLE, M.A. of St. Edmund Hall, Oxford. 3d Edition, corrected and enlarged, in 1 very thick vol. 8vo. 31s. 6d. cloth.

The English-Latin (3d Edition, 10s. 6d. cloth), and Latin-English (2d Edition, corrected and enlarged, 21s. cloth), portions may be had separately.

Riddle's Young Scholar's Latin Dictionary.

The Young Scholar's Latin-English and English-Latin Dictionary; being an Abridgment of the above. 3d Edit. square 12mo. 12s. 6d.

The Latin-English (7s. bound,) and English-Latin (5s. 6d. bound,) portions may be had separately.

EXTRACT FROM AN ARTICLE ENTITLED "SCHOOL BOOKS" IN THE CHURCH OF ENGLAND QUARTERLY REVIEW (NO. XXIII.) FOR JULY 1842.

"From the time that a boy at school commences translation of the simplest kind, derivations should be attended to; and indeed we should consider Mr. Riddle's an invaluable book, when compared with other Dictionaries, merely on the ground of its large stock of derivations. In the monotony of early instruction these are, perhaps, the very first things that awaken curiosity and interest; a momentary escape and respite, if only apparent, from the irksome matter in hand, is that for which boys are continually craving; and this may be more advantageously indulged by frequent reference to kindred English words, in which they feel themselves at home, than in any other manner."

Riddle's Diamond Latin-English Dictionary.

A Diamond Latin-English Dictionary. For the waistcoat-pocket. A Guide to the Meaning, Quality, and right Accentuation of Latin Classical Words. By the Rev. J. E. RIDDLE, M.A. Royal 32mo. 4s. bound.

"A most useful little lexicon to the general reader who may wish for an accommodating interpreter of such Latin words or sentences as may be encountered in every day's casual literary exercises. It is at once copious and succinct."

MORNING HERALD.

Valpy's Latin Grammar.

The Elements of Latin Grammar: with Notes. By R. VALPY, D.D. late Master of Reading School. New Edition, with numerous Additions and Corrections, 12mo. 2s. 6d. bound.

Moody's Eton Latin Grammar in English, &c.

The New Eton Latin Grammar, with the Marks of Quantity and the Rules of Accent; containing the Eton Latin Grammar as used at Eton, the Eton Latin Grammar in English: with important Additions, and easy explanatory Notes. By CLEMENT MOODY, of Magdalene Hall, Oxford: Editor of the Eton Greek Grammar in English. 4th Edit. revised throughout and enlarged, 2s. 6d. cloth. The Eton Latin Accidence: with Additions and Notes. 2d Edition, 12mo. 1s.

Graham's First Steps to Latin Writing. [Vide page 1.]**Valpy's Latin Vocabulary.**

A New Latin Vocabulary; adapted to the best Latin Grammars, with Tables of Numeral Letters, English and Latin Abbreviations, and the Value of Roman and Grecian Coins. By R. VALPY, D.D. 11th Edition, 12mo. 2s. bound.

Valpy's Latin Delectus, and Key.

Delectus Sententiarum et Historiarum; ad usum Tironum accommodatus: cum Notulis et Lexico. Auctore R. VALPY, D.D. New Edition, with Explanations and Directions; and a Dictionary, in which the Genders of Nouns, and the principal parts of Verbs, are inserted. 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

KEY; being a Literal Translation. By a PRIVATE TEACHER. New Edition, carefully revised, and adapted to the alterations in the new edition of the text, by W. B. BURDON, 12mo. 3s. 6d. cloth.

Valpy's Second Latin Delectus.

The Second Latin Delectus; designed to be read in Schools after the Latin Delectus, and before the *Analeccta Latina Majora*: with English Notes. By the Rev. F. E. J. VALPY, M.A. Head Master of the Free Grammar-School, Burton-on-Trent. 2d Edition, 8vo. 6s. bound.

Phædrus	Justin	Velleius Paterculus
Cornelius Nepos	Quintus Curtius	Horace
Ovid's Epistles	Virgil	Cicero
Cæsar	Livy	Lucretius.
Ovid's Metamorphoses	Florus	

Valpy's First Latin Exercises.

First Exercises on the principal Rules of Grammar, to be translated into Latin: with familiar Explanations. By the late Rev. E. VALPY, D.D. New Edition, with many Additions, 18mo. 1s. 6d. cloth.

In this work it has been endeavoured to give the learner some little knowledge of the elements of GRAMMAR, while he is studying the construction of words. A few general principles of science and morality imprinted on the memory at an early age, will never be erased from the mind, and will often lay the foundation of a substantial fabric of useful knowledge.

Valpy's Second Latin Exercises.

Second Latin Exercises; applicable to every Grammar, and intended as an Introduction to Valpy's "*Elegantissæ Latine*." By the Rev. E. VALPY, B.D. late Master of Norwich School. 8th Edit. 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

The Rules and Examples are intended as an immediate Sequel to Valpy's "*First Exercises*;" with which the youthful reader is supposed to be fully acquainted before these Exercises are put into his hands. He will thus be led, by a regular gradation, to Valpy's "*Elegantissæ Latine*," to which these Exercises will be an introduction. The Examples are taken from the purest Latin Writers (chiefly the Historians), in Prose and Verse.

Valpy's *Elegantissæ Latine*, and Key.

Elegantissæ Latine; or, Rules and Exercises illustrative of Elegant Latin Style: intended for the use of the Middle and Higher Classes of Grammar Schools. To which is added, the Original Latin of the most difficult Phrases. By the Rev. E. VALPY, B.D. late Master of Norwich School. 11th Edition, corrected, 12mo. 4s. 6d. cloth.

KEY, being the Original Passages taken from Latin Authors, which have been translated into English, to serve as Examples and Exercises in the "*Elegantissæ Latine*;" 12mo. 2s. 6d. sewed.

Valpy's Latin Dialogues.

Latin Dialogues; collected from the best Latin Writers, for the use of Schools. By R. VALPY, D.D. 6th Edition, 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

The principal use of this work is to supply the Classical Student with the best phrases on the common occurrences of life, from Plautus, Terence, Virgil, Cicero, Horace, Juvenal, &c. With a view of leading the scholar to a familiar knowledge of the purest writers, by storing his mind with elegant expressions, the Poets have been made to contribute a considerable share of the phrases. The *Naufragium* and the *Diluvium*, the most striking and useful of Erasmus's Colloquies, are added.

Butler's Praxis, and Key.

A Praxis on the Latin Prepositions: being an attempt to illustrate their Origin, Signification, and Government, in the way of Exercise. By the late Bishop Butler. 6th Edition, 8vo. 6s. 6d. boards.—KEY, 6s. boards.

An Introduction to the Composition of Latin Verse ;

containing Rules and Exercises intended to illustrate the Manners, Customs, and Opinions, mentioned by the Roman Poets, and to render familiar the principal Idioms of the Latin Language. By the late CHRISTOPHER RAPIER, A.B. 2d Edition, carefully revised by THOMAS KEECHER ARNOLD, M.A. 12mo. 3s. 6d. cloth.

KEY to the Second Edition. 16mo. 2s. 6d. sewed in cloth.

Howard's Introductory Latin Exercises.

Introductory Latin Exercises to those of Clarke, Ellis, Turner, and others : designed for the Younger Classes. By NATHANIEL HOWARD. A New Edition, 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

Howard's Latin Exercises extended.

Latin Exercises Extended ; or, a Series of Latin Exercises, selected from the best Roman Writers, and adapted to the Rules of Syntax, particularly in the Eton Grammar. To which are added, English Examples to be translated into Latin, immediately under the same rule. Arranged under Models. By NATHANIEL HOWARD. A New Edition, 12mo. 3s. 6d. cloth.

KEY, 2d Edition, 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

Bradley's Exercises, &c. on the Latin Grammar.

Series of Exercises and Questions ; adapted to the best Latin Grammar, and designed as a Guide to Parsing, and an Introduction to the Exercises of Valpy, Turner, Clarke, Ellis, &c. &c. By the Rev. C. BRADLEY, Vicar of Glasbury, Brecon. 6th Edition, with an Introduction to the Exercises of Valpy, Turner, Clarke, Ellis, &c. &c. By the Rev. C. BRADLEY, Vicar of Glasbury. 4th Edition, 12mo. 2s. 6d. bound.

Bradley's Latin Prosody, and Key.

Exercises in Latin Prosody and Versification. By the Rev. C. BRADLEY, Vicar of Glasbury, Brecon. 6th Edition, with an Appendix on Lyric and Dramatic Measures, 12mo. 3s. 6d. cloth.

KEY, 5th Edition, 12mo. 2s. 6d. sewed.

Hoole's Terminations.

Terminationes et Exempla Declinationum et Conjugationum, itemque Propria quæ Maribus, Quæ Genus, et As in Presenti, Englished and explained, for the use of Young Grammarians. By C. HOOLE, M.A. New Edition, revised throughout, with very considerable improvements, by THOMAS SANDOX, Second Master of the Grammar School, Lincoln. 12mo. 1s. 6d. cloth.

Greenlaw's Rules, &c. on Subjunctive Mood, & Key.

Rules and Exercises on the Right Use of the Latin Subjunctive Mood : interspersed with Observations to assist the Learner in the acquisition of a pure Latin Style. By the Rev. R. B. GREENLAW, M.A. Author of "The True Doctrine of the Latin Subjunctive Mood." 12mo. 6s. cloth.

KEY, 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

Tate's Horace.

Horatius Restitutus ; or, the Books of Horace arranged in Chronological Order, according to the Scheme of Dr. Bentley, from the Text of Gesner, corrected and improved : with a Preliminary Dissertation, very much enlarged, on the Chronology of the works, on the Localities, and on the Life and Character of that Poet. By JAMES TATE, M.A. 2d Edition, to which is now added, an original Treatise on the Metres of Horace, 8vo. 12s. cloth.

Turner's Latin Exercises.

Exercises to the Accidence and Grammar ; or, an Exemplification of the several Moods and Tenses, and of the principal Rules of Construction : consisting chiefly of Moral Sentences, collected out of the best Roman Authors, and translated into English, to be rendered back into Latin ; with references to the Latin Syntax, and Notes. By WILLIAM TURNER, M.A. late Master of the Free School at Colchester. New Edition, 12mo. 3s. 6d. lettered.

Beza's Latin Testament.

Novum Testamentum Domini Nostri Jesu Christi, interprete THEODORA BEZA. Editio Stereotype, 1 vol. 12mo. 3s. 6d. bound.

Valpy's Epitome Sacræ Historiæ.

Sacræ Historiæ Epitome, in usum Scholarum : cum Notis Anglicis. By the Rev. F. E. J. VALPY, M.A. Head Master of the Free Grammar School, Burton-on-Trent. 8th Edition, 16mo. 2s. cloth.

Editions of Greek Classic Authors.**Major's Euripides.**

Euripides. From the Text, and with a Translation of the Notes, Preface, and Supplement, of Porson; Critical and Explanatory Remarks, original and selected; Illustrations and Idioms from Matthiæ, Davies, Viger, &c.; and a Synopsis of Metrical Systems. By Dr. MAJOR, Head Master of King's College School, London. 1 vol. post 8vo. 24s. cloth.

Sold separately as follow, 6s. each:—

ALCESTIS,	MEDEA, 4th Edit.	PHRONESSA, 2d Edit.
HECUBA, 5th Edit.	ORESTES, 2d Edit.	

Brasse's Sophocles.

Sophocles, complete. From the Text of Hermann, Erfurdt, &c.; with original Explanatory English Notes, Questions, and Indices. By Dr. BRASSE, Mr. BURGESS, and Rev. F. VALPY. 2 vols. post 8vo. 34s. cloth.

Sold separately as follow, 6s. each:—

ŒDIPUS COLONEUS, 2d Edit.	AJAX, 3d Edit.
ŒDIPUS REX, 3d Edit.	ANTIGONE, 2d Edit.
PHILOCTETES, 3d Edit.	ELECTRA, 2d Edit.
TRACHINIA, 3d Edit.	

Burgess's Æschylus.

Æschylus—The Prometheus: English Notes, &c. By G. BURGESS, A.M. Trinity College, Cambridge. 2d Edition, post 8vo. 6s. boards.

Stocker's Herodotus.

Herodotus; containing the Continuous History alone of the Persian Wars: with English Notes. By the Rev. C. W. STOCKER, D.D. Vice-Principal of St. Alban's Hall, Oxford; and late Principal of Elizabeth College, Guernsey. A New and greatly Improved Edition, 2 vols. post 8vo. 18s. cloth.

Belfour's Xenophon's Anabasis.

The Anabasis of Xenophon. Chiefly according to the Text of Hutchinson. With Explanatory Notes, and Illustrations of Idioms from Viger, &c., copious Indexes, and Examination Questions. By F. CUNNINGHAM BELFOUR, M.A. Oxon. F.R.A.S. LL.D. late Professor of Arabic in the Greek University of Corfu. 4th Edit. with Corrections and Improvements, post 8vo. 8s. 6d. bds.

Barker's Xenophon's Cyropædia.

The Cyropædia of Xenophon. Chiefly from the text of Dindorf. With Notes, Critical and Explanatory, from Dindorf, Fisher, Hutchinson, Poppo, Schneider, Sturtz, and other eminent scholars, accompanied by the editor's comments. To which are added, Examination Questions, and copious Indices. By E. H. BARKER, late of Trinity Coll. Camb. Post 8vo. 9s. 6d. bds.

Burgess's Plato.

Plato—Four Dialogues: Crito, Greater Hippias, Second Alcibiades, and Sympolus. With English Notes, original and selected. In this edition Bekker's Text is adopted, and the whole of Heindorf's Notes are translated. By G. BURGESS, A.M. Post 8vo. 9s. 6d. boards.

Barker's Demosthenes.

Demosthenes—Oratio Philippica I., Olynthiaca I. II. and III., De Pace, Æschines contra Demosthenem, De Corona. With English Notes. By E. H. BARKER. 2d Edit. post 8vo. 8s. 6d. boards.

Hickie's Longinus.

Longinus on the Sublime. Chiefly from the Text of Weiske; with English Notes and Indexes, and Life of Longinus. By D. B. HICKIE, Head Master of Hawkshead Grammar School. 1 vol. post 8vo. 5s. cloth lettered.

Hickie's Theocritus.

Select Idylls of Theocritus; comprising the first Eleven, the 15th, 18th, 19th, 20th, and 24th. From the Text of Meineke; with copious English Notes, Grammatical and Explanatory References, &c. By D. B. HICKIE, Head Master of Hawkshead Grammar School. 1 vol. post 8vo. 6s. cloth lettered.

Valpy's Homer.

Homer's Iliad, complete: with English Notes, and Questions to the first Eight Books. Text of Heyne. By the Rev. E. VALPY, B.D. late Master of Norwich School. 6th Edition, 8vo. 10s. 6d. bound.

Text only, 5th Edition, 8vo. 6s. 6d. bound.

Editions of Latin Classic Authors.**Valpy's Tacitus, with English Notes.**

C. Cornelii Taciti Opera. From the Text of Brotier; with an Explanatory Notes, translated into English. By A. J. VALPY, M.A. 3 vols. post 8vo. 24s. bds.

Barker's Tacitus—Germany and Agricola.

The Germany of C. C. Tacitus, from Passow's Text; and the Agricola, from Brotier's Text; with Critical and Philological Remarks, partly original and partly collected. By E. H. BARKER, late of Trinity College, Cambridge. 6th Edition, revised, 12mo. 6s. 6d. cloth.

Valpy's Ovid's Epistles and Tibullus.

Electa ex Ovidio et Tibullo: cum Notis Anglicis. By the Rev. F. E. J. VALPY, M.A. Master of Barton-on-Trent School. 3d Edition, 12mo. 4s. 6d. cloth.

Bradley's Ovid's Metamorphoses.

Ovidii Metamorphoses; in usum Scholarum excerptæ: quibus accedunt Notulæ Anglicæ et Questiones. Studio C. BRADLEY, A.M. Editio Septima, 12mo. 4s. 6d. cloth.

Valpy's Juvenal and Persius.

Decimi J. Juvenalis et Persii Flacci Satiræ. Ex add. Rupertii et Koenig expurgatæ. Accedunt, in gratiam Juventutis, Notæ quædam Anglicæ scriptæ. Edited by A. J. VALPY, M.A. 3d Edit. 12mo. 5s. 6d. bd.

The Text only, 2d Edition, 3s. bound.

Valpy's Virgil.

P. Virgilio Maronis Bucolica, Georgica, Æneis. Accedunt, in gratiam Juventutis, Notæ quædam Anglicæ scriptæ. Edited by A. J. VALPY, M.A. 10th Edition, 18mo. 7s. 6d. bound.

The Text only, 19th Edition, 3s. 6d. bound.

Valpy's Horace.

Q. Horatii Flacci Opera. Ad fidem optimorum exemplarium castigata; cum Notulis Anglicis. Edited by A. J. VALPY, M.A. New Edition, 18mo. 6s. bd.

The same, without Notes. New Edition, 3s. 6d.

* The objectionable odes and passages have been expunged.

Barker's Cicero de Amicitia, &c.

Cicero's Cato Major, and Lælius: with English Explanatory and Philological Notes; and with an English Essay on the Respect paid to Old Age by the Egyptians, the Persians, the Spartans, the Greeks, and the Romans. By the late E. H. BARKER, Esq. of Trinity College, Cambridge. 6th Edition, 12mo. 4s. 6d. cloth.

Valpy's Cicero's Epistles.

Epistolæ M. T. Ciceronis. Excerptæ et ad optimorum fidem exemplorum denuo castigatæ; cum Notis Anglicis. Edited by A. J. VALPY, M.A. New Edition, 18mo. 3s. cloth.

The Text only, 5th Edit. 2s. cloth.

Valpy's Cicero's Offices.

M. Tullii Ciceronis de Officiis Libri Tres. Accedunt, in usum Juventutis, Notæ quædam Anglicæ scriptæ. Edited by A. J. VALPY, M.A. Editio Quinta, aucta et emendata, 12mo. 6s. 6d. cloth.

Barker's Cicero's Catilinarian Orations, &c.

Cicero's Catilinarian Orations. From the Text of Ernesti; with some Notes by the Editor, E. H. BARKER, Esq., and many selected from Ernesti; and with Extracts from Andreas Schottus's Dissertation, entitled Cicero a Calumnias Vindicatus. To which is appended, Tacitus's Dialogus de Oratoribus, sive de Causis Corruptæ Eloquentiæ; and, also, several beautiful Extracts from English Authors; with a Suggestion to the Conductors of Classical Schools to devote one day in the week to the study of English Literature. 12mo. 5s. 6d. bd.

Valpy's Cicero's Twelve Orations.

Twelve Select Orations of M. Tullius Cicero. From the Text of Jo. Casp. Orellius; with English Notes. Edited by A. J. VALPY, M.A. 2d Edition, post 8vo. 7s. 6d. boards

Barker's Cæsar's Commentaries.

C. Julius Cæsar's Commentaries on the Gallic War. From the Text of Oudendorp; with a selection of Notes from Dionysius Vossius, from Drs. Davies and Clarke, and from Oudendorp, &c. &c. To which are added, Examination Questions. By E. H. BARKER, Esq. late of Trinity College, Cambridge. Post 8vo. with several Woodcuts, 6s. 6d. boards.

Valpy's Terence.

Terence—The Andrian: with English Notes. Divested of every indelicacy. By R. VALPY, D.D. 2d Edit. 12mo. 2s. bound.

Catullus, Juvenal, and Persius.

Catullus, Juvenal, and Persius, Expurgati. In usum Scholæ Harrovienais. 1 vol. fcp. 8vo. 5s. cloth lettered.

Although the text is expurgated, the established number of the lines is retained, in order to facilitate the reference to the notes in other editions.

Bradley's Phædrus.

Phædri Fabulæ; in usum Scholarum expurgatæ: quibus accedunt Notulæ Anglicæ et Questiones. Studio C. BRADLEY, A.M. Editio Nonæ, 12mo. 2s. 6d. cl.

Bradley's Cornelius Nepos.

Cornelii Nepotis Vitæ Excellentium Imperatorum: quibus accedunt Notulæ Anglicæ et Questiones. Studio C. BRADLEY, A.M. Editio Octava, 12mo. 3s. 6d. cl.

Bradley's Eutropius.

Eutropii Historiæ Romanæ Libri Septem: quibus accedunt Notulæ Anglicæ et Questiones. Studio C. BRADLEY, A.M. Editio Decima, 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

Hickie's Livy.

The First Five Books of Livy: with English Explanatory Notes, and Examination Questions. By D. B. HICKIE, LL.D. Head Master of Hawkshead Grammar School. 2d Edition, post 8vo. 5s. 6d. boards.

Works by the Rev. S. T. Bloomfield, D.D. f.R.S.A.**Bloomfield's Greek Thucydides.**

The History of the Peloponnesian War, by Thucydides. A New Recension of the Text; with a carefully amended Punctuation; and copious Notes, Critical, Philological, and Explanatory; almost entirely original, but partly selected and arranged from the best Expositors, and forming a continuous Commentary: accompanied with full indices, both of Greek Words and Phrases explained, and matters discussed in the Notes. Dedicated, by permission, to the Right Hon. and Right Rev. Charles James, Lord Bishop of London. Illustrated by Maps and Plans, mostly taken from actual survey. 2 vols. 8vo. 36s. cl.

Bloomfield's Translation of Thucydides.

The History of the Peloponnesian War. By THUCYDIDES. Newly translated into English, and accompanied with very copious Notes, Philological and Explanatory, Historical and Geographical; with Maps and Plates. 3 vols. 8vo. £2. 5s. boards.

Bloomfield's Greek Lexicon to the New Testament.

Greek and English Lexicon to the New Testament; especially adapted to the use of Colleges and the higher Classes in the Public Schools, but also intended as a convenient Manual for Biblical Students in general. Fcp. 8vo. 9s. cloth.

Bloomfield's Greek Testament.

The Greek Testament: with copious English Notes, Critical, Philological, and Explanatory. 5th Edition, greatly enlarged, and very considerably improved, in 2 closely-printed volumes, 8vo. with Map of Palestine, £2, cloth.

Bloomfield's College and School Greek Testament.

The Greek Testament: with brief English Notes, Philological and Explanatory. Especially formed for the use of Colleges and the Public Schools, but also adapted for general purposes, where a larger work is not requisite. By the Rev. S. T. BLOOMFIELD, D.D. F.R.S.A. Vicar of Blabrooke, Rutland; Editor of the larger Greek Testament, with English Notes; and Author of the Greek and English Lexicon to the New Testament, printed uniform with, and intended to serve as a Companion to, the present work. 3d Edition, greatly enlarged and considerably improved, 12mo. 10s. 6d. cloth.

History, Chronology, and Mythology.**Lempriere's Classical Dictionary.**

By BAKER. A New Edition, by J. CAUVIN.

[Vide page 1.]

Blair's Chronological Tables.

Chronological Tables, from the Creation to the Present Time. A New Edition, carefully corrected, enlarged, and brought down to the present time, and printed in a convenient form. Under the revision of Sir HENRY ELLIS, K.H. Principal Librarian of the Brit. Mus. 1 vol. roy. 8vo.—Nearly ready.

Mangnall's Questions.—ONLY GENUINE AND COMPLETE EDITION.

Historical and Miscellaneous Questions, for the Use of Young People, with a Selection of British and General Biography. By R. MANGNALL. New Edition, with the Author's last Corrections and Additions, and other very considerable recent Improvements. 12mo. 4s. 6d. bound.

The only edition with the Author's latest Additions and Improvements, bears the imprint of Messrs. LONGMAN and Co.

Corner's Sequel to Mangnall.

Questions on the History of Europe: a Sequel to Mangnall's Historical Questions; comprising Questions on the History of the Nations of Continental Europe not comprehended in that work. By JULIA CORNER. New Edition, 12mo. 5s. bound.

Hort's Pantheon.

The New Pantheon; or, an Introduction to the Mythology of the Ancients, in Question and Answer; compiled for the Use of Young Persons. To which are added, an Accentuated Index, Questions for Exercise, and Poetical Illustrations of Grecian Mythology, from Homer and Virgil. By W. J. HORT. New Edition, considerably enlarged by the addition of the Oriental and Northern Mythology. 18mo. 17 Plates, 5s. 6d. bound.

Hort's Chronology.

An Introduction to the Study of Chronology and Ancient History By W. J. HORT. New Edition, 18mo. 4s. bound.

Knapp's Universal History.

An Abridgment of Universal History, adapted to the Use of Families and Schools; with appropriate Questions at the end of each Section. By the Rev. H. J. KNAPP, M.A. New Edition, with considerable additions, 12mo. 5s. bound.

Bigland's Letters on the Study of History.

On the Study and Use of Ancient and Modern History; containing Observations and Reflections on the Causes and Consequences of those Events which have produced conspicuous Changes in the aspect of the World, and the general state of Human Affairs. By JOHN BIGLAND. 7th Edition, 1 vol. 12mo. 6s. bds.

Keightley's Outlines of History.

Outlines of History, from the Earliest Period. By THOMAS KEIGHTLEY, Esq. New Edition, corrected and considerably improved, fcp. 8vo. 6s. cloth; or 6s. 6d. bound and lettered.

Keightley's History of England.

The History of England. By THOMAS KEIGHTLEY, Esq. In 2 vols. 12mo. 14s. cloth; or 15s. bound.

For the convenience of Schools, the volumes will always be sold separately.

Keightley's Elementary History of England.

An Elementary History of England By THOMAS KEIGHTLEY, Esq. Author of "A History of England," "Greece," "Rome," "Outlines of History," &c. &c. 12mo. 5s. bound.

Keightley's History of Greece.

The History of Greece. By THOMAS KEIGHTLEY, Esq. 3d Edition, 12mo. 6s. 6d. cloth; or 7s. bound.

Elementary History of Greece. 18mo. 3s. 6d. bound.

Keightley's History of Rome.

The History of Rome, to the end of the Republic. By THOMAS KEIGHTLEY, Esq. 3d Edition, 12mo. 6s. 6d. cloth; 7s. bound.

Elementary History of Rome. 18mo. 3s. 6d. bound.

Keightley's History of the Roman Empire.

The History of the Roman Empire, from the Accession of Augustus to the end of the Empire in the West. By THOMAS KEIGHTLEY, Esq. 12mo. 6s. 6d. cloth; or, 7s. bound.

QUESTIONS ON KEIGHTLEY'S HISTORY OF ENGLAND, Parts 1 and 2, each; *ROME*, 3d Edit.; *GREECE*, 3d Edit. 12mo. 1s. each, sewed.

Sir Walter Scott's History of Scotland.

History of Scotland. By Sir WALTER SCOTT, Bart. New Edition, 2 vols. fcp. 8vo. with Vignette Titles, 12s. cloth.

Cooper's History of England.

The History of England, from the Earliest Period to the Present Time. On a plan recommended by the Earl of Chesterfield. By the Rev. W. COOPER. 23d Edition, considerably improved. 18mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

Baldwin's History of England.

The History of England, for the use of Schools and Young Persons. By EDWARD BALDWIN, Esq., Author of "The History of Rome," &c. A New Edition, carefully revised and corrected, with Portraits. 12mo. 3s. 6d. bound.

Müller's Introduction to Mythology.

Introduction to a Scientific System of Mythology. By KARL OTTFRIED MÜLLER, Translated from the German by JOHN LEITCH. 1 vol. 8vo. uniform with "Müller's Dorians."—In the press.

Valpy's Elements of Mythology.

Elements of Mythology; or, an Easy History of the Pagan Deities: intended to enable the young to understand the Ancient Writers of Greece and Rome. By R. VALPY, D.D. 8th Edition, 12mo. 2s. bound.

Valpy's Poetical Chronology.

Poetical Chronology of Ancient and English History: with Historical and Explanatory Notes. By R. VALPY, D.D. New Edit. 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

Howlett's Tables of Chronology and Regal Genealogies.

ALOGIES, combined and separate. By the Rev. J. H. HOWLETT, M.A. 2d Edition, 4to. 2s. 6d. cloth.

Riddle's Ecclesiastical Chronology.

Ecclesiastical Chronology; or, Annals of the Christian Church, from its Foundation to the Present Time. To which are added, Lists of Councils and of Popes, Patriarchs, and Archbishops of Canterbury. By the Rev. J. E. RIDDLE, M.A. 8vo. 15s. cloth.

Tate's Continuous History of St. Paul.

The Continuous History of the Labours and Writings of St. Paul, on the basis of the Acts, with intercalary matter of Sacred Narrative, supplied from the Epistles, and elucidated in occasional Dissertations: with the *HORÆ PAULINÆ* of Dr. PALEY, in a more correct edition (with occasional notes), subjoined. By J. TATE, M.A. Canon Residentiary of St. Paul's. 8vo. with Map, 13s. cloth.

Geometry, Arithmetic, Land-Surveying, &c.**Scott's Arithmetic and Algebra.**

Elements of Arithmetic and Algebra. By W. SCOTT, Esq. A.M. and F.R.A.S. Second Mathematical Professor at the Royal Military College, Sandhurst. Being the First Volume of the Sandhurst Course of Mathematics. 1 vol. 8vo. [In a few days.]

Narrien's Elements of Euclid.

Elements of Geometry: consisting of the first four, and the sixth, Books of Euclid, chiefly from the Text of Dr. Robert Simson; with the principal Theorems in Proportion, and a Course of Practical Geometry on the Ground. Also, Four Tracts relating to Circles, Planes, and Solids; with one on Spherical Geometry. By JOHN NARRIEN, F.R.S. and R.A.S. Professor of Mathematics, &c. at the Royal Military College, Sandhurst. 8vo. with many diagrams, 10s. 6d. bound.

Keith on the Globes, and Key.

A New Treatise on the Use of the Globes; or, a Philosophical View of the Earth and Heavens: comprehending an Account of the Figure, Magnitude, and Motion of the Earth: with the Natural Changes of its Surface, caused by Floods, Earthquakes, &c.: together with the Principles of Meteorology and Astronomy: with the Theory of Tides, &c. Preceded by an extensive selection of Astronomical and other Definitions, &c. &c. By THOMAS KEITH. New Edit. considerably improved, by J. ROWSOTHAM, F.R.A.S. and W. H. PRIOR. 12mo. with 7 Plates, 6s. 6d. bound.

In this edition are introduced many new questions relating to the positions of the Sun, Moon, and Planets, for the years 1838, 1839, 1840, 1841, and 1842, respectively. * The only GENUINE edition, with the Author's latest Additions and Improvements, bears the imprint of Messrs. LONGMAN and Co.

KEY, by PRIOR, revised by J. ROWSOTHAM, 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

Keith's Geometry.

The Elements of Plane Geometry: containing the First Six Books of Euclid, from the Text of Dr. SIMSON: with Notes, Critical and Explanatory. To which are added, Book VII. including several important Propositions which are not in Euclid; together with the Quadrature of the Circle, the Lune of Hippocrates, the Maxima and Minima of Geometrical Quantities: and Book VIII. consisting of Practical Geometry; also, Book IX. Of Planes and their Intersections; and Book X. Of the Geometry of Solids. By THOMAS KEITH. 4th Edition, corrected by S. MATHEW, 8vo. 10s. 6d. boards.

Keith's Trigonometry.

An Introduction to the Theory and Practice of Plane and Spherical Trigonometry, and the Stereographic Projection of the Sphere, including the Theory of Navigation: comprehending a variety of Rules, Formule, &c. with their Practical Applications to the Mensuration of Heights and Distances, to determine the Latitude by two Altitudes of the Sun, the Longitude by the Lunar Observations, and to other important Problems on the Sphere; and on Nautical Astronomy. By THOMAS KEITH. 7th Edition, corrected by S. MATHEW, 8vo. 14s. cloth.

Crocker's Land Surveying.

Crocker's Elements of Land Surveying. New Edition, corrected throughout, and considerably improved and modernised, by T. G. BUNT, Land-Surveyor, Bristol. To which are added, Tables of Six-figure Logarithms, superintended by Richard Farley, of the Nautical Almanac Establishment. Post 8vo. with Plan of the Manor of North Hill, Somerset, belonging to J. W. Astor, Esq., numerous Diagrams, a Field-book, Plan of part of the City of Bath, &c. 12s. 6d.

Farley's Six-Figure Logarithms.

Tables of Six-figure Logarithms: containing the Logarithms of Numbers from 1 to 10,000, and of Sines and Tangents for every Minute of the Quadrant and every Six Seconds of the first Two Degrees: with a Table of Constants, and Formulæ for the Solution of Plane and Spherical Triangles. Superintended by RICHARD FARLEY, of the Nautical Almanac Establishment. Post 8vo. (unnumbered), 4s. 6d. cloth.

Euler's Algebra, by Hewlett.

Elements of Algebra. By LEONARD EULER. Translated from the French, with the Notes of M. Bernoulli, &c. and the Additions of M. De la Grange, by the Rev. JOHN HEWLETT, B.D. F.A.S. &c. To which is prefixed, a Memoir of the Life and Character of Euler, by the late Francis Horner, Esq. 8th Edition, carefully revised and corrected. 1 vol. 8vo. 15s. cloth.

Taylor's Arithmetic, and Key.

The Arithmetician's Guide; or, a complete Exercise Book: for Public Schools and Private Teachers. By W. TAYLOR. New Edition, 12mo. 2s. 6d. bound.

KEY to the same. By W. H. WHITE, of the Commercial and Mathematical School, Bedford. 12mo. 4s. bound.

Molineux's Arithmetic, and Key.

An Introduction to Practical Arithmetic; in Two Parts: with various Notes, and occasional Directions for the use of Learners. By T. MOLINEUX, many years Teacher of Accounts and the Mathematics in Macclesfield. In Two Parts. Part 1, New Edition, 12mo. pp. 198, 2s. 6d. bound. London, n.d. Part 2 6th Edition, 12mo. 2s. 6d. bound.

KEY to Part 1, 6d.—KEY to Part 2, 6d. (18 to 32).

Joyce's Arithmetic, and Key.

A System of Practical Arithmetic, applicable to the present state of Trade and Money Transactions: illustrated by numerous Examples under each Rule. By the Rev. J. JOYCE. New Edition, corrected and improved by S. MAYNARD, 12mo. 3s. bound.

* The only Genuine Edition, containing the Author's latest Additions and improvements, bears the imprint of Messrs. Longman and Co.

KEY; containing Solutions and Answers to all the Questions in the work. To which are added, Appendices, shewing the Method of making Mental Calculations, and a New Mode of Setting Sums in the Early Rules of Arithmetic. New Edition, corrected and enlarged by S. MAYNARD, 18mo. 3s. bound.

Simson's Euclid.

The Elements of Euclid: viz. the First Six Books, together with the Eleventh and Twelfth; also the Book of Euclid's Data. By ROBERT SIMSON, M.D. Emeritus Professor of Mathematics in the University of Glasgow. To which are added, the Elements of Plane and Spherical Trigonometry; and a Treatise on the Construction of Trigonometrical Canon: also, a concise Account of Logarithms. By the Rev. A. ROBERTSON, D.D. F.R.S. Savilian Professor of Astronomy in the University of Oxford. 48th Edition, carefully revised and corrected by S. MAYNARD, 8vo. 9s. bound.—Also.

The Elements of Euclid: viz. the First Six Books, together with the Eleventh and Twelfth. Printed, with a few variations and additional references, from the Text of Dr. SIMSON. New Edition, carefully corrected by S. MAYNARD, 18mo. 5s. bound.—Also.

The same work, edited, in the Symbolical form, by R. BLAKELOCK, M.A. late Fellow and Assistant-Tutor of Catherine Hall, Cambridge. New Edit. 18mo. 6s. cloth.

Morrison's Book-Keeping, and Forms.

The Elements of Book-keeping, by Single and Double Entry; comprising several Sets of Books, arranged according to Present Practice, and designed for the use of Schools. To which is annexed, an Introduction to Merchants' Accounts, illustrated with Forms and Examples. By JAMES MORRISON, Accountant. New Edition, considerably improved, 8vo. 8s. half-bound.

Sets of Blank Books, ruled to correspond with the Four Sets contained in the above work: Set A, Single Entry, 3s.; Set B, Double Entry, 5s.; Set C, Commission Trade, 12s.; Set D, Partnership Concerns, 4s. 6d.

Morrison's Commercial Arithmetic, and Key.

A Concise System of Commercial Arithmetic. By J. MORRISON, Accountant. New Edition, revised and improved, 12mo. 4s. 6d. bound.

KEY. 2d Edition, 12mo. 6s. bound.

Nesbit's Mensuration, and Key.

A Treatise on Practical Mensuration: containing the most approved Methods of drawing Geometrical Figures; Mensuration of Superficies; Land Surveying; Mensuration of Solids; the Use of the Carpenter's Rule; Timber Measure, in which is shewn the method of Measuring and Valuing Standing Timber; Artificers' Works, illustrated by the Dimensions and Contents of a House; a Dictionary of the Terms used in Architecture, &c. By A. NESBIT. 11th Edition, corrected, with 200 Woodcuts, 3 Copperplates, and an engraved Field-book, 12mo. 6s. bound.—**KEY**, 7th Edition, 12mo. 6s. bound.

Nesbit's Land Surveying.

A Complete Treatise on Practical Land Surveying. By A. NESBIT. 7th Edition, greatly enlarged, 1 vol. 8vo. illustrated with 160 Woodcuts, 12 Copperplates, and an engraved Field-book, (sewed), 12s. boards.

Nesbit's Arithmetic, and Key.

A Treatise on Practical Arithmetic. By A. NESBIT. 3d Edition, 12mo 5s. bd.

A **KEY** to the same. 12mo. 5s. bound.

Illustrations of Practical Mechanics.

By the Rev. H. MOSELEY, M.A. Professor of Natural Philosophy and Astronomy in King's College, London. Being the First Volume of Illustrations of Science, by the Professors of King's College. 2d Edition, 1 vol. fcp. 8vo. with numerous Woodcuts, 8s. cloth.

Balmain's Lessons on Chemistry.

Lessons on Chemistry; for the use of Pupils in Schools, Junior Students in the Universities, and Readers who wish to learn the fundamental Principles and leading Facts. With Questions for Examination, a Glossary of Chemical Terms, and an Index. By WILLIAM H. BALMAIN. Fcp. 8vo. 6s. cloth.

Books for Young People, by Mrs. Marcet.**Lessons on Animals, Vegetables, and Minerals.**

18mo. 2s. cloth.

Conversations on the History of England.

For the Use of Children. By Mrs. MARCET. Vol. 1: the History of the Reign of Henry VII. 18mo. 4s. 6d. cloth.

Mary's Grammar:

Interspersed with Stories, and intended for the use of Children. By Mrs. MARCET, Author of "Conversations on Chemistry," &c. 6th Edition, revised and enlarged, 18mo. 3s. 6d. half-bound.

The Game of Grammar:

With a Book of Conversations (fcp. 8vo.) shewing the Rules of the Game, and affording Examples of the manner of playing at it. By Mrs. MARCET. In a varnished box, or done up as a post 8vo. volume in cloth, 6s.

Conversations on Language, for Children.

18mo.—In the press.

Willy's Stories for Young Children:

Containing The House-Building—The Three Pits (The Chalk Pit, The Coal Pit, and The Gravel Pit)—and The Land without Laws. 3d Edit. 18mo. 2s. half-bd.

Willy's Holidays:

Or, Conversations on different Kinds of Governments: intended for Young Children. 18mo. 2s. half-bound.

The Seasons:

Stories for very Young Children. New Editions, 4 vols.—Vol. 1, Winter, 3d Edition; Vol. 2, Spring, 3d Edition; Vol. 3, Summer, 3d Edition; Vol. 4, Autumn, 3d Edition. 2s. each, half-bound.

Geography and Atlases.**Butler's Ancient and Modern Geography.**

A Sketch of Ancient and Modern Geography. By SAMUEL BUTLER, D.D. late Bishop of Lichfield, formerly Head Master of Shrewsbury School. New Edition, revised by his Son, 8vo. 2s. boards; bound in roan, 10s.

Butler's Ancient and Modern Atlases.

An Atlas of Modern Geography; consisting of Twenty-three Coloured Maps, from a new set of plates, corrected, with a complete Index. By the late Dr. BUTLER. 8vo. 12s. half-bound.—By the same Author,

An Atlas of Ancient Geography; consisting of Twenty-two Coloured Maps, with a complete Accentuated Index. 8vo. 12s. half-bound.

A General Atlas of Ancient and Modern Geography; consisting of Forty-five coloured Maps, and Indices. 4to. 24s. half-bound.

* * The Latitude and Longitude are given in the Indices.

The Plates of the present new edition have been re-engraved, with corrections from the government surveys and the most recent sources of information.

Edited by the Author's Son.

Abridgment of Butler's Geography.

An Abridgment of Bishop Butler's Modern and Ancient Geography: arranged in the form of Question and Answer, for the use of Beginners. By MARY COWINGHAM. 3d Edition, fcp. 8vo. 2s. cloth.

Butler's Geographical Copy-Books.

Outline Geographical Copy-Books, Ancient and Modern: with the Lines of Latitude and Longitude only, for the Pupil to fill up, and designed to accompany the above. 4to. each 4s.; or together, sewed, 7s. 6d.

Goldsmith's Popular Geography.

Geography on a Popular Plan. New Edit. including Extracts from recent Voyages and Travels, with Engravings, Maps, &c. By Rev. J. GOLDSMITH. 12mo. 14s. 6d.

Dowling's Introduction to Goldsmith's Geography.

Introduction to Goldsmith's Grammar of Geography: for the use of Junior Pupils. By J. DOWLING, Master of Woodstock Boarding School. New Edit. 18mo. 9d. sd.

By the same Author,

Five Hundred Questions on the Maps of Europe, Asia, Africa, North and South America, and the British Isles; principally from the Maps in Goldsmith's Grammar of Geography. New Edition, 18mo. 8d.—KEY, 9d.

Goldsmith's Geography Improved.

Grammar of General Geography; being an Introduction and Companion to the larger Work of the same Author. By the Rev. J. Goldsmith. New Edition, improved. Revised throughout and corrected by Hugh Murray, Esq. With Views, Maps, &c. 18mo. 3s. 6d. bound.—KEY, 6d. sewed.

Mangnall's Geography.

A Compendium of Geography; with Geographic Exercises: for the use of Schools, Private Families, &c. By R. MANGNALL. 4th Edition, completely corrected to the Present Time, 12mo. 7s. 6d. bound.

Hartley's Geography, and Outlines.

Geography for Youth. By the Rev. J. HARTLEY. New Edit. (the 8th), containing the latest Changes. 12mo. 4s. 6d. bound.

By the same Author,
Outlines of Geography: the First Course for Children. New Edit. 18mo. 9d. sd.

The French Language.**Hamel's French Grammar and Exercises.**

A New Edition. By N. LAMBERT. [Vide page 1.

Hamel's French Grammar.

A New Universal French Grammar; being an accurate System of French Accidence and Syntax. By N. HAMEL. New Edit. greatly improved, 12mo. 4s. bd.

Hamel's French Exercises, Key, and Questions.

French Grammatical Exercises. By N. HAMEL. New Edition, carefully revised and greatly improved, 12mo. 4s. bound.
KEY, 12mo. 3s. bound.—QUESTIONS, with Key, 9d. sewed.

Hamel's World in Miniature.

The World in Miniature; containing a faithful Account of the Situation, Extent, Productions, Government, Population, Manners, Curiosities, &c. of the different Countries of the World: for Translation into French. By N. HAMEL. New Edition, corrected and brought down to the present time, 12mo. 4s. 6d. bd.

Tardy's French Dictionary.

An Explanatory Pronouncing Dictionary of the French Language, in French and English; wherein the exact Sound of every Syllable is distinctly marked, according to the method adopted by Mr. Walker, in his Pronouncing Dictionary. To which are prefixed, the Principles of the French Pronunciation, Prefatory Directions for using the Spelling representative of every Sound; and the Conjugation of the Verbs, Regular, Irregular, and Defective, with their true Pronunciation. By L'ABBÉ TARDY, late Master of Arts in the University of Paris. New Edit. carefully revised, 1 vol. 12mo. 6s. bound.

English Grammars, Reading Books, &c.**Maunder's New Universal Class-Book.** [Vide page 1.**Lindley Murray's Works.**

. THE ONLY GENUINE EDITIONS, WITH THE AUTHOR'S LAST CORRECTIONS.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. First Book for Children, 23d edition, 18mo. 6d. sd. 2. English Spelling-Book, 46th edition, 18mo. 18d. bd. 3. Introduction to the English Reader, 32d edit. 12mo. 2s. 6d. bd. 4. The English Reader, 24th edit. 12mo. 3s. 6d. bd. 5. Sequel to ditto, 7th edit. 12mo. 4s. 6d. bound. 6. English Grammar, 51st edit. 12mo. 3s. 6d. bd. Ditto abridged, 121st edit. 18mo. 1s. bd. 7. Enlarged Edit. of Murray's Abridged English Grammar, by Dr. GILES. 18mo. 1s. 6d. cloth. 8. English Exercises, 48th edit. 12mo. 2s. bound. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 9. Key to Exercises, 12mo. 2s. bd. 10. Exercises and Key, 48th and 25th editions, in 1 vol. 3s. 6d. bound. 11. Introduction au Lecteur François, 6th edition, 12mo. 3s. 6d. bound. 12. Lecteur François, 6th edit. 12mo. 6s. bound. 13. Library Edition of Grammar, Exercises, and Key, 7th edit. 3 vols. 8vo. 11s. bds. 14. First Lessons in English Grammar, New edit. revised and enlarged, 18mo. 9d. bd. 15. Grammatical Questions, adapted to the Grammar of Lindley Murray: with Notes. By C. BRADLEY, A.M. 8th Edit. improved, 12mo. 2s. 6d. bd. |
|---|---|

Mavor's Spelling-Book.

The English Spelling-Book; accompanied by a Progressive Series of easy and familiar Lessons: intended as an Introduction to the Reading and Spelling of the English Language. By Dr. MAVOR. 460th Edition, with various revisions and improvements of Dr. Mavor, legally conveyed to them by his assignment, with Frontispiece by Stothard, and 44 beautiful Wood Engravings, designed expressly for the work, by Harvey. The whole printed in an entirely new type, 12mo. 1s. 6d. bound.

* The only Genuine Edition, with the Author's latest Additions and Improvements, bears the imprint of Messrs. Longman and Co.

Carpenter's Spelling-Book.

The Scholar's Spelling Assistant; wherein the Words are arranged according to their principles of Accentuation. By T. CARPENTER. New Edition, corrected throughout, 12mo. 1s. 6d. bound.

NOTICE.—The only Genuine and Complete Edition of CARPENTER'S SPELLING is published by Messrs. Longman and Co. and Messrs. Whittaker and Co. Any person selling any other edition than the above is liable to action at law, and on discovery will be immediately proceeded against, the whole book being copyright.

Blair's Class-Book.

The Class-Book; or, 365 Reading Lessons: for Schools of either sex; every lesson having a clearly-defined object, and teaching some principle of Science or Morality, or some important Truth. By the Rev. D. BLAIR. New Edition, 12mo. 5s. bound.

Blair's Reading Exercises.

Reading Exercises for Schools; being a Sequel to Mavor's Spelling, and an Introduction to the Class-Book. By the Rev. D. BLAIR. New Edition, corrected, 12mo. 2s. bound.

Smart's English Grammar, and Accidence.

The Accidence and Principles of English Grammar. By B. H. SMART. 12mo. 4s. cloth.

The Accidence separately, 1s. sewed in cloth.

Smart's Practice of Elocution.

The Practice of Elocution; or, a Course of Exercises for acquiring the several requisites of a good Delivery. By H. B. SMART. 4th Edition, augmented, particularly by a Chapter on Impassioned Reading Qualified by Taste, with Exercises adapted to a Chronological Outline of English Poetry. 12mo. 6s. cl.

Graham's Art of English Composition.

English; or, The Art of Composition explained in a series of Instructions and Examples. By G. F. GRAHAM. Fcp. 8vo. 7s. cloth.

"Among the many treatises on the art of composition, we know of none so admirably adapted for the purpose at which it aims as this. The introductory remarks are excellent, especially those on the study of languages; the arrangement is natural throughout; the examples are simple; and the variety so great, that the teacher can never be at a loss for a new subject."—ATLAS.

Graham's Helps to English Grammar.

Helps to English Grammar; or, Easy Exercises for Young Children. Illustrated by Engravings on Wood. By G. F. GRAHAM, Author of "English; or, the Art of Composition." 12mo. 3s. cloth.

"Mr. Graham's 'Helps to English Grammar' will be found a good elementary book; and the numerous engravings which it contains must render it extremely attractive to the 'Young Children' for whose use these 'Easy Exercises' are designed. The arrow, which is for the first time adopted in a work of this sort, to illustrate the connection, by action or motion, between persons and things, is a happy idea."—JOHN BULL.

Bullar's Questions on the Scriptures.

Questions on the Holy Scriptures, to be answered in Writing, as Exercises at School, or in the course of Private Instruction. By JOHN BULLAR. New Edit. 18mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

Aikin's Poetry for Children.

Poetry for Children; consisting of Selections of easy and interesting Pieces from the best Poets, interspersed with Original Pieces. By Miss AIKIN. New Edit. considerably improved, 18mo. with Frontispiece, 2s. cloth.



